



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



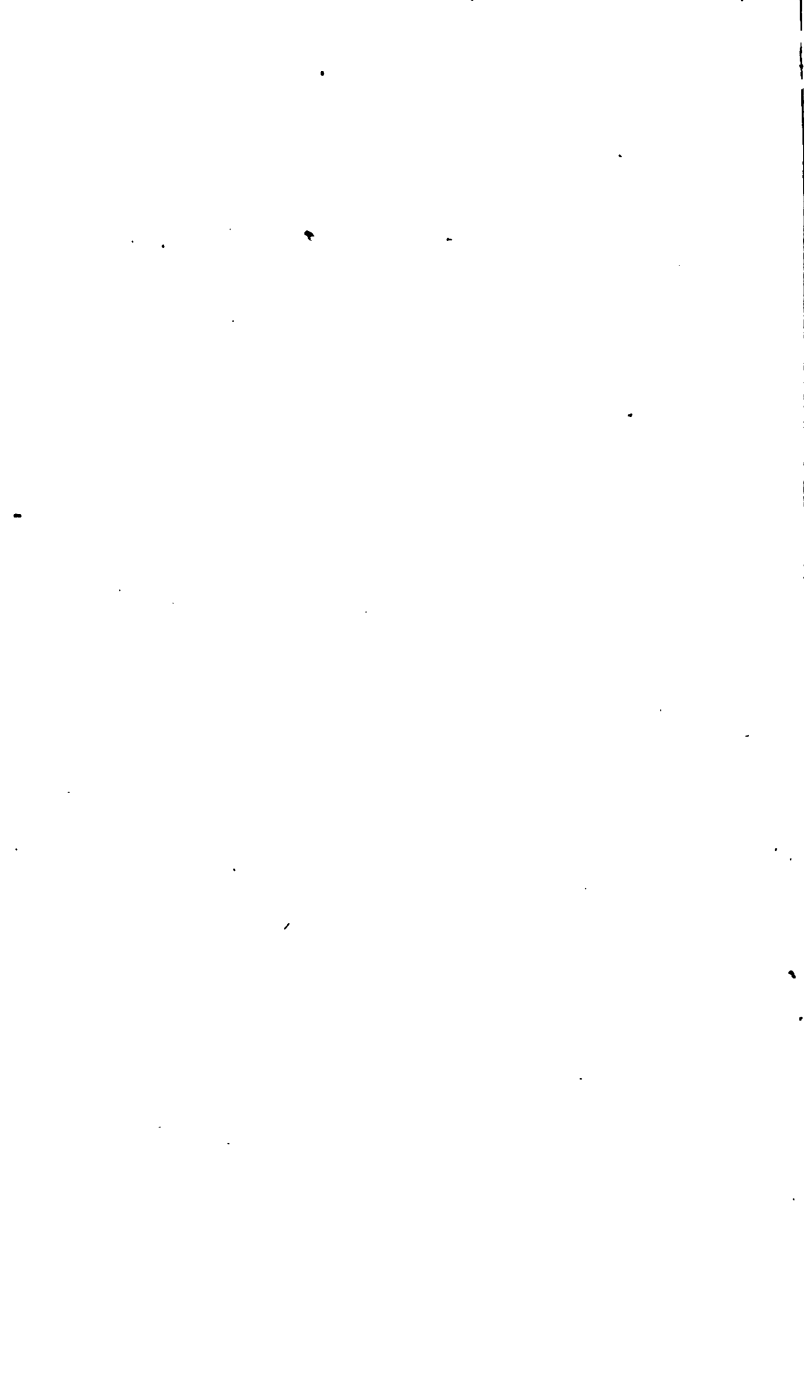
Fiedler N 410



Presented to the library by
Prof. H. G. Y. H.

Helen R. Chapman.

March 20th - 1836



A
COMPENDIOUS
GERMAN GRAMMAR,

WITH A
DICTIONARY OF THE PRINCIPAL
PREFIXES AND AFFIXES
ALPHABETICALLY ARRANGED.

BY ADOLPHUS BERNAYS, PH. DR.

PROFESSOR OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE IN
KING'S COLLEGE, LONDON.

SECOND EDITION.

IMPROVED AND ENLARGED.

LONDON:

TREUTTEL, WURTZ AND RICHTER, SOHO SQUARE;
B. FELLOWS (BOOKSELLER TO KING'S COLLEGE); SIMPKIN AND
MARSHALL; BLACK, YOUNG AND YOUNG; J. SOUTER;
J. TAYLOR (BOOKSELLER TO THE UNIVERSITY OF
LONDON); J. WACEY (LATE BOOSEY); E. WILSON;
BACH AND CO.; A. SCHLOSS; AND ALL OTHER
ENGLISH AND FOREIGN BOOKSELLERS.

1833.



LONDON:

G. SCHULZE, 13, POLAND STREET.

Directions for finding the rules in the second edition of the Grammar, which are referred to in the Exercises, and in the notes to the Poetical and Prose Anthologies, and which correspond with the first edition.

1st Ed.	2nd Ed.	1st Ed.	2nd Ed.	1st Ed.	2nd Ed.	1st Ed.	2nd Ed.
1	4	42	83 & 84	84	178	125	209
2		43	85	85	166 & 167	126	210, p. 97 & 99
3	13	44	86	86	168 to 170	127	209
4	14	45	N. 12, p. 44	87		128	211 & 212
5	15	46	89 to 91	88		129	
6	6 to 12	47	82	89		130	
7		48	87	90		131	215
8		49	N. 12, p. 44	91		132	
9		50	136	92		133	
10	19 & 20	51	137	93	163 to 165	134	93, a, & 94
11		52	N. 21, p. 58	93½	Also list in	135	93, b
12	19 & 20	53	78	94	the Appen-	136	N. 14, p. 47
13	18	54		95	dix to the	137	77
14	20	55	N. 23, p. 58	96	Exercises.	138	
15	18 & 20	56	N. 22, p. 58	97		139	80
16	21, 29 & 30	57	138	98		140	81
17		58	139	99	171	141	none
18	28	59	140	100	172	142	96
19		60	141	101		143	106
20	55 to 63	61	142	102	220	144	107
21	49	62	143	103	162	145	100
22	50	63	144	104		146	97
23	51	64	145	105		147	
24	52	65	146	106	183	148	303
25	54	66	154 a.	107		149	
26	53	67		108		150	N. 47, p. 114
27	16, 38, 39 & 40	68	178 & 179	109	184 to 186	151	98
28	41 & 42	69	154 b.	110	188	152	99
29	43	70		111	187	153	102
30	55 to 63	71	154 b.	112	N. p. 84	154	103
31	95	72		113	189	155	104
32	2, 110 & 120	73	162	114	190	156	101
33	67	74	Obs. p. 63	115	191	157	116
34	68	75		116	192	158	118
35	95	76	174	117	193	159	119
36	2, 110 & 120	77	178 & 179	118	195	160	117
37	70 to 72	78		119	none	161	120 & 121
38	73	79	175 to 177	120	198	162	123
39	75	80		121	199 & 200	163	124
40	76	81	181	122	201 to 206	164	125
41	120 & 195, & No. 17, p. 48	82	180	123	207 & 92	165	126
		83	177	124	194	166	127

1st. Ed.	2nd Ed.	1st Ed.	2nd Ed.	1st Ed.	2nd Ed.	1st Ed.	2nd Ed.
167	128	199	none	230	N. 55, p. 125	262	
168	none	200	239	231	100	263	
169	108 to 110	201	none	232	none	264	
170	111 & 112	202	230	233		265	
171	113	203		234		266	299
172	114	204	242	235	251	267	
173	N. p. 53	205	156	236		268	
174	130	206	157	237		269	
175	115		N. 44, p. 107	238	254	270	223
176	N. 15, p. 48	207	& R. 241	239	251, e	271	none
177	122 & 123	208	none	240	293	272	312
178	224	209	N. 45, p. 111	241	294 to 299	273	161
179	225	210	N. 58, p. 130	242	300	274	9, p. 9
180		211	273	243	299	275	317
181	226	212		244	301	276	313
182	N. p. 104	213	257, b	245	N. 56, p. 142	277	283
183	159	214		246	304	278	183 & 245
184	160 & 161	215	257	247		279	318 & 319
185	158	216	255	248	305	280	288
186		217	256	249		281	none
187	227 to 229	218		250	294	282	274
188		219		251		283	266 to 273
189	N. 43, p. 107	220	258 d, & 259	252	Obs. vi, p. 54	284	none
190	237	221		253	295 to 297	285	N. 60, p. 134
191		222		254		286	122
192	233 to 236	223		255	296	287	284 & 285
193	232	224	252	256	298	288	210, i
194	234	225	258, a	257	none	289	105
195	235	226	261 & 262	258	294	290	214
196	238	227	258, a	259	N. 65, p. 141	291	91
197	239 & 240	228	258, b	260		292	130
198	243 to 245	229	258, c	261	299	293	316

PREFACE.

THE favour and indulgence with which my first essay of a Compendious German Grammar has been received by my fellow-teachers and the public, have induced me to bestow more attention on this new edition. It is in fact a new work; not only in size and type, but in its whole arrangement and, in some respects at least, in its system.

The principal alterations have been made :

1) In the rules respecting the gender and declension of substantives. With[regard] to the former, I have given only such as could be supported without long lists of exceptions, leaving the remainder to be learnt by use; those on the declensions are so arranged that they may be adapted to any other system besides my own.

2) In the rules on the declensions of adjectives and pronouns. These rules have been more detailed, and separated, without my losing sight of the connexion which actually exists between them.

3) In the verbs. Here the rules on the formation of the compound tenses, and the passive voice have been enlarged and rendered easy of attainment; but the principal improvement has been made in the manner of presenting the conjugation of the neuter and the separable compound verbs.

4) In the syntax. This portion of the grammar has been both simplified and extended. The extention, however, has been effected, less by multiplying the rules, than by illustrating them by numerous and striking examples, which in all instances are more useful than a complexity of precepts.

Satisfied that the best method of acquiring the grammar of any language is to apply its rules practically to reading and writing, I shall shortly publish a new edition of the Exer-

cises,* adapted to the present edition of the grammar, and an entirely new work, to be called, the "*German Reader*," which will consist of appropriate selections in prose and verse, illustrative of the rules contained in this grammar, and of the genius of the German language generally. In these volumes every assistance will be given required by a beginner; particularly (in the "*Exercises*" in English and German, and in the "*Reader*" in German and English,) the following lists, arranged in alphabetical order :

1) Of all the substantives mentioned in the grammar with reference to their gender and declension.

2) Of all verbs which require auxiliaries, cases or prepositions different from the English.

3) Of the principal adjectives requiring cases or prepositions, and of the prepositions in their various applications and government.

4) Of the principal conjunctions and adverbs.

By translating from one language into the other, going through all the rules in succession, and frequently referring to the most essential ones, the student will soon be able to write, and speak on common topics with facility; and, if he then applies to such works as Becker's *Grammatik*, and continues to read good authors, he may gradually attain a perfect knowledge of a language, which, while it is one of the richest, is also one of the most difficult of Europe.

It will be perceived that, although I have retained the usual grammatical terms and divisions, I have availed myself of the labours of modern grammarians. I should have done so to a greater extent, but for the considerations that grammar is seldom studied in this country as a science, and that the learning of a foreign language offers difficulties enough, without our super-adding those of a new grammatical system and terminology.

East-Street, December, 1832.

* For translating German into English.

CONTENTS.

	Rules.	Page.		Rules.	Page.
<i>Preface</i>			Possessive pronouns.	99-105	49
<i>Pronunciation</i>	1		Persons used in ad-		
			dressing people....	106-107	52
ETYMOLOGY	11		Demonstrative pro-		
Articles, definite & in-			nouns.....	108-114	52
definite.....	2 & 3	—	Pronouns undeclined	115	54
<i>On the substantives</i>	4 & 5	—	Relative pronouns ..	116-122	—
<i>On the genders</i>	6 to 16	12	Interrogative pro-		
— declensions, ge-			nouns.....	123-128	55
neral rules.....	17-22	17	Indefinite pronouns,		
Declension of the singul.	23-28	18	undeclined.....	129	56
Formation of the plural	29-37	20	Indefinite pronouns,		
Substs. with different			declined.....	130-135	57
plurals.....	38-40	28	<i>Numbers</i>	136-146	58
Substs. used only in the			<i>On the Verbs</i>	147	60
singular.....	41	30	Enumeration of		
Substs. taking their plu-			moods and tenses..	148-153	—
ral from other words..	42	31	Conjugation of re-		
Declension of foreign			gular verbs and		
substantives.....	44-47	32	Anxiliaries.....	154	61
Table of declensions...	48	33	General rules and the		
Declensions, I to VI.,	49-54	33	use of <i>to be</i> , <i>to do</i> &c.	155-161	66
Declension of names of			Irregular verbs.....	162	67
persons.....	55-63	38	Intransitive verbs...	163-165	74
<i>Adjectives</i> (64) & their			Passive voice.....	166-167	65
declensions.....	64-82	40	Reflective and reci-		
Comparison of adjs....	83-92	44	procal verbs.....	168-170	77
Adjs. used substantively	93-94	47	Impersonal verbs...	171-173	78
Personal pronouns....	95-98	48	On compound verbs..	174	79

	Rules.	Page.		Rules.	Page.
Inseparable compound verbs.....	175-177	—	Government of verbs and adjectives.....	246-250	115
Separable compound verbs.....	178-179	80	Verbs & adjs. requiring the Accusative.....	251	—
Separable and inseparable verbs.....	180-182	81	Verbs req. the Acc. and Dat.....	252-254	119
On the adverbs.....	183-188	83	Verbs req. the Acc. and Gen.....	255, 256	118
Prepositions (89) requiring the Genitive	190	85	Verbs. & adjs. req. the Gen.	257	119
Prep. req. the Dative..	191	86	————— Dat..	258-262	121
————— Accusat.	192	87	————— Pre-		
————— Dat. or Accus..	193	88	positions.....	263	127
Combination of prep. with the articles, advs. and prons...	194-196	90	Ablative relation....	264, 265	129
Interjections.....	197	91	Factitive & adverbial relation.....	266-275	130
SYNTAX.....		92	Compound sentences	276-288	133
Use of the articles &c.	198-208	—	Construction....		137
Relation of subst. to each other.....	209-215	97	Connection of substs. and adjs.....	289, 290	—
Formation of simple sentences.....	216-221	101	Principal sentences; direct order.....	293-299	138
Agreement of the verb with its subject	222-223	103	Principal sentences; indirect order	300-303	142
Use of the tenses.....	224-226	—	Accessory sentences..	304-409	144
Use of the moods ...	227-238	104	Miscellaneous rules..	310-319	145
The Participles	239-245	112	Dictionary of Prefixes and Affixes.....		147
			Index.....		162

COMPENDIOUS GERMAN GRAMMAR.

PRONUNCIATION.

1. THE letters of the German Alphabet are the same as those of the English, and follow in the same order; but in the subsequent list, the vowels and consonants are arranged separately.

V O W E L S.

2. Vowels are pronounced either long or short; but they always retain the sound indicated below, unless they are united into diphthongs.—They are long : a) at the end¹ of a syllable², or before a single consonant closing the syllable; b) after or before *th* in the same syllable; c) when followed by an *h*, even if this should precede another consonant; d) the *a*, *e* and *o*, when double, and the *i* followed by *e*, if these two do not form a diphthong (see *ie*).—They are short when the syllable terminates in two or more consonants.³

¹ Here, as well as elsewhere, the end of a syllable also means the end of a word.—² Exc. the final *e* which is always short (see pronunciation *b*) of this letter).—³ A few monosyllables are short, al-

Figures.	Names.	Value.	Pronunciation.
3. A a	ah	a	As in <i>arm</i> , or in the first syllable of <i>parade</i> .
Ä ä ⁴	ah-eh	ae	— <i>hare</i> or <i>fat</i> .
Ê e	eh	e	a) In root syllables, either <i>close</i> as in <i>bell</i> , <i>bed</i> , or <i>open</i> as in <i>berry</i> , <i>bear</i> (a difference to be learnt by practice.) b) In prefixes and affixes, whether at the end of a syllable or not, <i>half mute</i> , as in <i>Abel</i> . c) <i>Mute</i> as a final after another <i>e</i> or <i>i</i> (see R. 2.) ⁵ .
Ï i	ih	i	as in <i>shield</i> , <i>bill</i> .
Ô o	oh	o	— <i>port</i> , <i>pot</i> .
Ö ö	oh-eh	oe	— <i>eu</i> in French, <i>gueux</i> , <i>peut</i> .
û u	oo	u	— in <i>true</i> , <i>bull</i> .
üe ü ⁶	oo-eh	ue	as <i>u</i> in French, <i>dût</i> , <i>du</i> .
Y y	ipsilon	y	as in <i>syllable</i> ; (never used as a consonant).

EXAMPLES—*a long*: da there, Name name, Tag day, fahl bald, Paar pair; *short* Ball ball. *ä long*: Bär bear; *sh.*: Käffer cask. *e close, long*: Eden Eden, mehr more, See sea;

though ending with a single consonant, while many vowels followed by *ch*, *sch* or *ß* are long, these characters being considered as single letters; nor are these characters ever doubled, although the preceding vowel should require to be short, as in Buch book, Busch bush.

⁴ These as well as *ö* and *ü* must be considered as simple vowels; nor do they appear as two letters, unless they begin a word requiring a capital initial, and even then they are often written and printed as *Ä* or *Ï* &c.

⁵ After *b* and *g* the double *e* is mostly dissyllabic, as be-enget narrowed, ge-ehret honoured.

⁶ Occasionally found as *ui* with the same sound.

sh.: Brett board; *open*, *long*: Leben life, Steg path, Heer army;
sh.: Nest nest. *ë half mute*: Verlust loss, Gabe gift, Ganzes
 whole. *Mute*: die Harmonie harmony, Armee army. *i long*:
 mir to me, ihn him, Bier beer; *sh.*: Mitte middle. *o long*:
 Chor chorus, Lohn reward, Loos lot; *sh.*: Gott god. *ö long*:
 Böse evil, Möhre carrot; *sh.*: Götter gods. *u long*: Du thou,
 Kuh cow; *sh.*: Butter butter, ü long: Lüge lie, Kühn bold; *sh.*:
 Sünde sin. *y long*: Asyl asylum; *sh.*: Sylbe syllable.

DIPHTHONGS.

Figures.	Names.	Value.	Pronunciation.
4. Ai ai	ah-ih	ai	as <i>y</i> in <i>by</i> . Ai and ay are pronounced perhaps a little broader, but the difference is so trifling that by many authors ei is used for all the others.
Ay ay	ah-ipsilon	ay	
Ei ei	eh-ih	ei	
Ey ey	eh-ipsilon	ey	
Au au.	ah-oo	au	as <i>ow</i> in <i>how</i> .
Aeu æu	ah-eh-oo	æu	somewhat broader than <i>oy</i> in <i>joy</i> .
Eu eu	eh-oo	eu	
Je ie	ih-eh	ie	as in <i>soldier</i> , when the accent falls on the previous syllable ⁷ ; (see <i>e</i> .)
Oi oi	oh-ih	oi	as <i>oi</i> in <i>voice</i> ; only occurring in a few proper names.
Oy oy	oh-ipsilon	oy	

EXAMPLES: Kaiser emperor, Bayern Bavaria, Freyheit free-

⁷ Viz. in Arie musical air, Comödie comedy, Familie family, Hieroglyph hieroglyphic, Historie history, Lilie lily, Schlessen Silesia, Spanien Spain, Spanier Spaniard.—Moreover when an *n* is added to a word ending in *ie* (as Melodie melody, Melodi-en melodies); or when the *e* takes the place of another which should be added, as a sign of the plural, e. gr. Knie knee, Kni-*e* for Knie-*e* knees.

dom, Ey egg. Bau building, Mauer wall. Aeuglein little eye, Häuser houses, Leute people. Weizenburg, Hoyer.

CONSONANTS.

5. Consonants are pronounced harder at the end of a syllable, or before other consonants terminating a syl. than at the beginning; consequently *b* and *b* are respectively pronounced in such positions as *p* and *t*. But as we always endeavour in German to commence a syl. with a consonant, these two letters resume their natural sounds, when the word which they terminate is increased; e. gr. Lob praise, Lo**-**bes of praise; Brob loaf, Bro**-**be loaves.

6. Consonants are never mute⁸ (exc. *h*), unless doubled for the sake of showing that the preceding vowel is short, when the two are pronounced as one. Ex: Mutter, mother⁹.

Figures.	Names.	Value.	Pronunciation.
7. B b	beh	b	As in Engl. (see Rule 5).
C c	tseh	c	As <i>k</i> wherever it is pronounced as such in Engl.; and as <i>ts</i> (in <i>bets</i>) when in Engl. it sounds like <i>s</i> , — Cäsar, Cicero, (pron. <i>tsaysar</i> , <i>tsitsero</i> .)
* d	tseh-kah	ck	As in Engl. (used for <i>kk</i> , see R. 6.)

⁸ Accordingly in such combinations as *gn*, *tn*, *pf*, *pf*, each letter is distinctly pronounced, as in *Knie* knee; *Pferd* horse; *Psalm* psalm.

⁹ If one belongs to the previous syl. both must be sounded, as in *Mit-theilung* communication, *mit-helfen*, to co-operate. — N.B. Hyphens, as here introduced, are however seldom used in German; yet with a little practice the learner will be able to discern when the consonants should be separated or read as one.

D d	deh	d	Ditto (see R. 5.)
dt	deh-teh	dt	For <i>tt</i> (see R. 6.)
f f	eff	f	As in Engl.
ff	eff-eff	ff	Ditto (See R. 6.)
g g	gay	g	As in <i>give</i> , <i>go</i> , (<i>gieb</i> give; <i>gehe</i> go;) when an initial. As a final, or followed by other final consonants, either as in <i>big</i> , or like the final <i>ch</i> (see below). Between <i>i</i> and <i>e</i> , almost as <i>y</i> , e. gr. <i>meinige</i> , (pr. <i>mīniye</i>), mine.
h h	hah	h	As in <i>hot</i> when an initial; but mute after a vowel in the same syl. and after <i>r</i> and <i>t</i> : <i>hut</i> hat, <i>Jahr</i> year, <i>Rhein</i> Rhine, <i>Muth</i> courage.
j i	yot	j	As <i>y</i> in <i>yes</i> ; <i>Jacob</i> .
k t	kah	k	As in Engl.
l l	el	l	Ditto.
m m	em	m	Ditto.
n n	en	n	Ditto.
p p	peh	p	Ditto.
q q	koo	q	Ditto.
r r	err	r	As in English, but more distinct as a final.
rh	err-hah	rh	Like <i>r</i> , the <i>h</i> being mute.
s s	ess	s	Pronounced in some parts of Germany, when an initial, like the Engl. <i>s</i> , (e. gr. <i>see</i> like <i>zee</i>); generally, however, it is pro-

			nounced as in <i>see</i> , which sound it also retains between two vowels, thus <i>Rose</i> (rose), pro. <i>Ro=se</i> . N.B. The <i>s</i> is used to mark the end of a syl. or word, and is always sharp, as in <i>hiss</i> .
ff	ess-ess	ss	As in Engl. (see R. 6.)
ft	ess-teh	st	Ditto.
ſ t	teh	t	As in Engl. But before an i followed by another vowel, like <i>ts</i> . <i>Nation</i> (pr. <i>natsion</i>) nation.
th th	teh-hah	th	Like <i>t</i> , the <i>h</i> being mate, (see R. 2, <i>b</i>): <i>That</i> deed, <i>Berth</i> worth.
t	teh-tset	tz	Like <i>ts</i> , for <i>zz</i> , (see R. 6.)
ſ v	fow	v	Like <i>f</i> in all genuine German words: <i>Water</i> (pr. <i>Fater</i>), father; but in those of foreign origin, especially proper names, as in <i>vigilant</i> .
W w	veh	w	As <i>v</i> in <i>Virgil</i> .
x x	iks	x	As in Engl.
z z	tset	z	Like <i>ts</i> (on which account we often write <i>Nazion</i> , for <i>Nation</i> ; <i>Zeber</i> for <i>Geber</i> , &c.)

8. COMPOUND CONSONANTS,

Forming additional Articulations.

Figures.	Names.	Value.
Ch ch	tseh-hah ch	<p>I. Like <i>k</i> at the beginning of words, when preceding a consonant, or <i>a</i>, <i>e</i>, or <i>u</i>: Christus Christ, Chor choir; also when followed by an <i>s</i> originally of the same syllable: Fuch^s fox, Fuch^s=se foxes.</p> <p>II. As in the Scotch pronunciation of <i>ch</i> in <i>loch</i>, after <i>a</i>, <i>e</i>, <i>u</i>, or <i>au</i>, when originally of the same syllable: Buch book; Buche beech.</p> <p>III. As in the Scotch pronunciation of <i>gh</i> in <i>light</i>, before or after <i>e</i>, <i>i</i>, <i>y</i>, <i>ä</i>, <i>ö</i>, <i>ü</i>, <i>au</i> and <i>eu</i>, and after <i>l</i>, <i>n</i> or <i>r</i>: Chemie chymistry, Chili Chili, recht right, ich I, Milch milk, Mönch monk, Furcht fear¹⁰.</p>

¹⁰ It is impossible perhaps to give a correct notion of these sounds by description. Yet it may be useful to observe, that the sound in R. II is guttural, and is produced by a contraction of the larynx, while the

N.B.—The final *g* is generally pronounced like the *ch* according to Rs. II and III, but softer, as may be heard by comparing *Magd* maid-servant, and *Macht* power, *Sieg* victory, and *sick* sick. In many words from the French, the *ch* as well as the *g* and *j*, are pronounced as in that language; such are: *Charge*, *Anti* = *chambre*, *atachiren*, *Chef*, *Chicane*, *Chimäre*, *Chocolate*; *Magio*, *engagiren*, *Gage*, *Genie*, *Geniren*, *Loge*, *Logis*, *Page*; *Jalousie*, *Journal*, &c.

ng	en-gay	ng	} As in English.
nt	en-kay	nk	
ph ph	peh-hah	ph	As in <i>philosopher</i> .
sch sch	ess-tseh-hah	sch	As <i>sh</i> in English, <i>Schiller</i> .

N.B.—The *s* before *ch* belongs to the previous syl. so *bisshen* is pronounced *bisshen*. *S* before *c*, *f*, *l*, *m*, *p*, *t*, commencing a word or syl. is pronounced in the greater part of Germany almost like *sh*.; but the practice, although

breath is forced through it; and that the sound in R. III is dental, being effected by the breath passing freely through the lower teeth, while the tip of the tongue is applied to their root.

sanctioned by many good grammarians, is on the decline.

ß

ess-tsett sz

Like the c in mace, is only used as a final, or before a closing consonant, e. gr. *Müße*, leisure, *ich muß*, I must, *du mußt* thou must. It is as sharp as ff, which however is never placed after a long vowel, while the ß is often put after a short vowel, even by the best writers, as we do not like to employ ff as a final or before a closing consonant. If therefore an e is added to a syl. with a short vowel closed by ß, this character is replaced by ff, as *die Nüsse* the nut, *die Nüsse* nuts.—N.B. s and z are distinct letters and belong to two different syllables, as in *Auszug* extract.

9. Capital initials are required by *all* substantives, as well as by all words employed substantively, and by the pronouns of the 3rd person, used for the 2nd (see R. 105.)

ON THE ACCENT.

10. The accent (which is independent of the length or shortness of a syllable) always rests in genuine German words on the root syl. as in *bauen* to build, *gebäuet* built, *erbäulich* edifying, *Gebet* prayer, *gebet* give, *erblich*, hereditary, *erblich* grew pale. Exc. *lebendig* alive (for *lebendig*), *Antwort* answer, *possiertlich* funny, and words ending in *ei*, in which the accent is always on this syllable, as : *Kinderei* childishness.

11. In compound words the accent rests generally on the modifying word, as in in *Kaufmann* merchant; *abschreiben* to copy, *Abschrift* a copy, *Kaufmannssohn* merchant's son.

12. In foreign words, the accent lies either on the syl. which bears it originally, or (more frequently) on the last syllable.

ETYMOLOGY.

1. The parts of speech are as follows (*): Article, Substantive, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb, Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction and Interjection.—Of these, in German, the first four are declinable, and the fifth, viz. the verb, as in English, subject to conjugation.

ARTICLES.

2. DEFINITE.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	of 3 gend.
<i>N.</i>	der	die	das	die the
<i>G.</i>	des	der	des	der of the
<i>D.</i>	dem	der	dem	den to the
<i>A.</i>	den	die	das	die the

3. INDEFINITE.

	<i>Singular.</i>			
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	
	ein	ein e	ein	a or an
	ein es	einer	ein es	of a or an
	ein em	einer	ein em	to a or an
	einen	eine	ein	a or an

ON THE SUBSTANTIVE.

4. Substantives are common or proper, and these again, primitive, derivative or compound, collective or reiterative; but for general purposes it is sufficient to attend to the first two distinctions.

5. We farther notice Gender, Number and Cases.

(*) See Preface.

THE GENDERS.

6. In English, all names applied to animated beings are, according to the sex (if the sex is known or attended to) masculine or feminine; two genders which are also applied to the Supreme Being, heathen deities, angels and other spirits; while the names of things and of abstract notions are neuter, unless they are personified, and the masc. or fem. gender is applied to them figuratively.—This, as far as regards man, animals, God, and other spiritual beings is also generally¹ the case in German.

7. A few domestic animals, besides their generic name, are in both languages distinguished by sexual appellations, and a name for their young. In German the generic names of some are *neut.* those for the sexes, *masc.* or *fem.*, and those for the young, also *neut.*, their sex not being taken into consideration. Ex. das Pferd the horse, der Hengst stallion, die Stute or Mähre mare, das Füllen filly; das Schwein pig, der Eber boar, die Sau sow, das Ferkel young pig. Or with regard to man: der Mensch human being (homo), der Mann man, (mas. vir), die Frau woman, das Kind child.

8. The generality of animated beings have but one name for each kind, which may either be masc. fem. or neuter, e. gr. der Tiger tiger; die Hyäne hyena, das Kameel camel; and if the sex is to be distinguished, we say of the male: das Männchen or männliche Thier, or Insect, der

¹ Die Schildwache sentinel, die Mannsperson or das Mannsbild male person; das Frauenzimmer lady, Weibsbild female person, and das Weibsbüß doxy, which take the gender from their last words (see R. 13); das Mädchen, Mädel or Mägdelein girl or maiden, and das Fräulein unmarried lady, which are diminutives (see R. 15); das Weib woman, and das Mensch wench; das Gespenst the ghost or goblin, are exceptions.

männliche Vogel or Fische, (male animal, insect, bird or fish), and of the female: das Weibchen, or weibliche Thier, or Insect, der weibliche Vogel or Fische, (female animal, &c.); of the young: das Junge.

9. In the same manner, the three genders are applied to the names of things, and abstract notions; e. gr. der Mund mouth, die Wange cheek, das Ohr ear; der Löffel spoon, die Gabel fork, das Messer knife; der Geist spirit, die Seele soul, das Gemüth mind; der Eifer zeal, die Tugend virtue, das Laster vice.

10. The gender thus applied to animals, things and abstract notions is invariably fixed, so that it cannot be changed even by personification. In many words it may be known from their nature, and in many more from their terminations; but for a considerable number no general rules can be given, and the student ought, in learning a substantive, always to commit it to memory with its respective article der, die or das.

11. From the nature of substantives, we know, as **MASCULINE**: the names of winds, seasons, months and days (exc. das Jahr year, die Mittwoch (but also der Mittwoch) Wednesday, and a few other compounds (see R. 19), and many roots of verbs, as der Haß hatred, from hassen to hate. As **NEUTER**: a) The names of metals (exc. die Platina, der Stahl steel, Zinn, Zombak, and a few others of modern discovery which are masc).

b) Those of the letters of the alphabet.—

c) Those of countries, provinces, towns and villages.*

* Exc. die Mark Marche or Mark, die Lausitz Lusatia, die Pfalz Palatinate, die Krimm Crimea, die Moldau Moldavia and others in au (not gau), die Türkei and others in ei or ey; der Haag the Hague, der or das Elsaß Alsacia; also the names of countries and provinces formed of compound words, the last of which is of the masc. or fem. gender, as der Rheingau, die Wetterau, districts of Germany; as well as the names of towns compounded with der Stein stone (rock), die Burg castle, or

d) The diminutives (see R. 15).

e) Most of the collective and reiterative terms, especially those commencing with *ge*, or ending in *ſel*, as *das Volk* people (nation), *das Gebirge* chain of mountains, *das Gefchrei* repeated cries, *das Schabſel* scrapings.

f) All words made substantives from other parts of speech, without an alteration in their form, as *das Leſen* the reading, from *leſen* to read, *das Wenn* the if, *das Bitter* the bitter.

g) Abstract adjectives, as *das Erhabene* und *das Schöne* the sublime and the beautiful.

12. *By termination* we distinguish only such polysyllabic words as follow one gender with few or no exceptions, viz: as **MASCULINE**, those in *ant*, *iſt* and *ling*. As **FEMININE**: those in *e*,³ *ei* or *ey*,⁴ *eſ*, *enſ*, *heit*, *ie*, *iſ*, *inſ*, *iſſ*, *ſchaft*,⁵ *ung*,⁶ *ur* and *uth*. As **NEUTER**: those in *amm*, *chen*, *ell*, *iſt*, *il*, *ill*, *ing*, *lein*, *oll*, *orium*, *ſel*,⁷ *ſal* and *thum*.⁸

Male appellations terminating in any of those syllables are of course masculine.

N.B.—Many of these terminations belong to foreign words, which, in general retain their original gender.

die Stadt town, in which these words happen to be still considered as common nouns, and the first word as an epithet to distinguish them, e. gr. *der Königſtein* a fortress in Saxony, *die Starckenburg* a ruined castle in Hesse, *die Königſtadt* the new-town of Hesse-Cassel. Otherwise, and in most instances, such compounds are also neuter, as *das alte Regensburg* old Ratisbon (See R. 13).

EXCEPTIONS.—³ *Der Affe* ape, *der Bolle* or *Bulle* bull, *der Drache* dragon, *der Falke* falcon, *der Farre* bull, *der Finke* finch, *der Haſe* hare, *der Löwe* lion, *der Ochſe* ox, *der Rabe* raven, *der Rappe* black horse; — *der Franjoſe* Frenchman, and other names of nations, which are *maſc*. *Das Auge* eye, *das Ende* end, and *das Erbe* inheritance, and *das Gebirge* and other collectives beginning with *ge* and ending in *e*, are *neuter*.—⁴ *Der Papagei* parrot.—⁵ *Das Petchſt* seal (stamp).—⁶ *Der Hornung* February.—⁷ *Der Stöpfel* stopper (of a bottle).—⁸ *Der Beweiſthum* proof, *der Irrthum* error, *der Reichthum* riches.

13. In *compound substantives* the last gives the gender, as *der Hausvater* father of a family, *das Vaterhaus* the paternal house. Exc: in names of towns. (See R. 11. c. and N. 2.)

Der Abscheu the horror,—from *die Scheu* fear.

Der Mittwoch Wednesday, from *die Woche* week.

Die Antwort the answer, from *das Wort* word.

Der Verhaft the arrest, from *die Haft* captivity.

Die Leunaugen the lamprey, from *das Auge* eye.

The following *fem.* formed of the *masc.* *Muth* courage: *Anmuth* gracefulness, *Armuth* poverty, *Demuth* humility, *Großmuth* generosity, *Langmuth* long suffering, *Sanftmuth* gentleness, *Schweremuth* and *Behmuth* melancholy.

Der Veracht suspicion, and *die Andacht* devotion.

Der Verkehr intercourse, and *die Rückkehr* return.

Der Langohr, *Langbein*, *Stumpfnase*, the long ear(ed), long leg(ged), pug nose(d) man, although *Ohr* and *Bein* are neut. and *Nase* fem.

14. Appellations relating to males, as well as the names of some animals, may be made *fem.* by the addition of the syllable *in* or *inn*, (always *inn* in the plural), and mostly by changing the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, *au* (not *eu*) into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, *äu*, if there be such in the root; as *der Graf* the count, *die Gräfin* countess, *der Gott* the god, *die Göttin* the goddess, *der Freund* the male friend, *die Freundin* the female friend.

This change is sometimes, although improperly, applied to family names, but without a change of vowels, as *Herr Bauer* Mr. Bauer, *Frau Bauerin* Mrs. Bauer.

If the word ends in *e*, this letter is cut off, as *der Löwe* the lion, *die Löwin* the lioness.

N. B. For further information on the gender, see Appendix to the Exercises.

15. DIMINUTIVES.—The syllables *chen*, *elchen*, *lein* and *el*, are often added to substantives, (the latter changing at the

same time their radical vowels,) to express smallness; as in the English, *manikin* for little man. Of these *chen* is the most usual; *lein* being more employed in the higher style (though sometimes also to express contempt,) and *el* in the south of Germany, and in the sportive style.

If a word ends in *e*, this letter is cut off, as *Knabe* boy, *Knäbchen*; if it ends in *ch* or *g* (sometimes also when it ends in *sch*), it takes *elchen*, and if in *ge* or *de*, it adds *lchen*; as *Buch* book, *Büchelchen* little book, *Sache* thing, *Sächelchen* little thing. All diminutives, whatever the original gender of the words, become neuter. (See R. 11, d.)

16. Substantives which vary in their signification with their gender.

der Band volume (of a book)	das Band ribbon
der Bauer peasant	das Bauer cage
der Bruch fraction, rupture	das Bruch' bog
der Buckel hump	die Buckel boss
der Bund alliance	das Bund bundle
der Chor choir	das Chor chorus
der Erbe heir	das Erbe inheritance
die Erkenntniß knowledge	das Erkenntniß judicial decision
der Gehalt contents	das Gehalt salary
der Geißel hostage	die Geißel scourge
der Geschöß a certain tax	das Geschöß missile
die Gift gift	der or das Gift poison
der Haft clasp	die Haft captivity
der Harz Harz forest	das Harz resin
der Heide heathen	die Heide heath
der Hut hat	die Hut (or Huth) guard, pasture
der Raper privateer	die Raper caper
der Kiefer jaw	die Kiefer pine
der Kunde customer	die Kunde intelligence

die Lehen or Lehn feudaltenure	das Lehen or Lehn investment with a fief
der Leiter conductor	die Leiter ladder
der Lohn reward	das Lohn wages
der Mangel want	die Mangel mangle
die Mark mark (weight), Marche (a district)	das Mark marrow
der Marsch march	die Marsch marsh
der Mast mast	die Mast fattening food for animals
der Mensch man	das Mensch wench
der Messer one who measures	das Messer knife
der Mohr negro	das Mohr moor
der Pack parcel	das Pack rabble
der Reis or Reiss rice	das Reis twig
der Schild shield	das Schild sign-board
der Schwallst bombast	die Schwallst (also der Geschwallst) swelling
der See lake	die See sea
der Sprosse sprout	die Sprosse step of a ladder
der Stift peg, pencil	das Stift ecclesiastical foundation
der Theil part	das Theil share
N.B.—The compounds with Theil are masc. Exc. das Urtheil judgment.	
der Thor fool	das Thor gate
der Verdienst earning	das Verdienst merit
der Vorwand pretence	die Vorwand front partition
die Wehr weapon	das Wehr wear
der Zeug woven stuff	das Zeug material
der Zoll toll	das Zoll inch.

DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES AND FORMATION OF THEIR PLURAL.

17. The relations of substantives to each other and to other parts of speech are expressed, in most modern lan-

guages exclusively by prepositions, or indicated by their position, while in Latin and Greek several of those relations are shown by endings, called *cases*, and the models after which these variations are made, *declensions*. In German also many substantives distinguish certain cases by terminations, thus :

In the Singular.

18. The **MASCULINE** adds to the *Genitive* *s* or *es*, *n* or *en*. If *s*, the other cases receive no addition; if *es*, the *Dative* adds *e*; and if *n* or *en*, the *Dat.* and *Acc.* add each respectively *n* or *en* also.

19. The **FEMININE** remains unaltered (except in a few phrases in which some particular words add *n* or *en* in the *dat.* as *auf Erden* on earth, for *auf der Erde*).

20. The **NEUTER** adds to the *Gen.* *s* or *es*; and to the *Dat.* *e*, if the *Gen.* adds *es*; the *Acc.* is always like the *Nom.*

In the Plural.

21. The **THREE GENDERS** add an *n* to the *Dat.* unless the *Nom.* ends in *n*.

22. In both sing. and plu. the *Vocative* is like the *Nom.* and the *Ablative* relation is expressed by a preposition, generally governing the dative.

RULES ON THE DECLENSION OF THE SINGULAR.

23. *Gen. in s, and the other cases unaltered:*

a) In the **MASC.** substs. ending in *el*, *en*, *em* (short), *er*, *eur*; and *The tea*, *Kaffee* coffee, *Käse* cheese, *Decl.* I and IV.

b) The **NEUT.** in *e*, *el*, *en*, *er* (not *ier*) or *lein*, (*Decl.* I.)

c) The **MASC.** in *or* (which sometimes also follow R. 26) as *Autor* (author), *Assessor*, *Cantor* (parish clerk), *Creditor*, *Pastor*, *Prior*, *Professor*, *Rector* (head of a university), *Reformator* (reformer), *Senator*, &c. (*Decl.* IV).

24. *Gen. in es, Dat. in e, Acc. like Nom.*

a) All the MASC. not mentioned in Rs. 23, 25, 26 and 27.

b) All NEUT. (exc. *der Herr*, R. 52.) not belonging to R. 23.

N. B. The *e* before the *s* is requisite only with words ending in *s*, *sch*, *ß*, and *z*; with those ending in *b*, *d*, *ch*, *g*, *t*, and *ft*, it is desirable; but with other terminations it may be omitted, as well as the *e* of the *Dat.* (Decl. II, III, and IV).

25. *Gen. Dat. and Acc. in n.* (Decl. V).

a) The MASC. ending in *e* (see N. 3);

b) A few names of nations ending in *er*, as *Neger negro*;

c) *der Ungar Hungarian*, *der Bauer peasant*.

NB. Both those of *b* and *c* are also made with the *Gen.* in *s*, and are then of Decl. IV.

26. *Gen. Dat. and Acc. in en*: (Decl. VI)

a) Appellations relating to men, derived from the Lat. or Greek, ending in

ant	ast	*ent	graph	ist	og	ot	*ut
*ar	*at	*et	ist	it	on	soph	yt

b) Names of NATIONS ending in a consonant, especially those which have the accent on the last syllable, as:

Barbar	Janitschar	Cossack	Uhlán	Frantzof	(or Frantzofe V.)
Buffar	(Janissary)	Polack	Galmuck		(Frenchman).
Tartar	Bosniaf	Croat	Panbur		

c) The following MASCULINE:

der Ahn ancestor	der Fürst prince
der Bär bear	der Fied sop
der Basilisk basilisk	der Gefell companion
der Cadett cadet	der Graf count
der Comet comet	der Schalk scoundrel
der Demant or Diamant diamond	der Held hero
der Elephant elephant	der Herr lord

* Many words with these terminations, which with few exceptions, are *not* personal appellations, belong to Rs. 24 and 34 or 35, Decl. II.

der Hirt herdsman	der Prinz prince
der Fassei footman	der Profoß military jailor
der Lärm (or Lärmen R. 23) noise	der Schranz sycophant
der Leu lion	der Schultzeiß mayor
der Narr fool	der Spaz sparrow
der Obeliß obelisk	der Steinmeß stone mason
der Oberist colonel	der Tyrann tyrant
der Ochß ox	der Vorfahr predecessor.
der Planet planet	

d) The following ; which also form the sing. by R. 24 ; but the plur. always by R. 37.

der Kamerad comrade	der Papagei parrot
der Kapaun capon	der Psalm psalm.

27. The following are used with both the endings *en* and *e* in the *Nom.* With the former they belong to R. 23, Decl. I ; but with the latter, they take in the *Gen.* *nß* and in the *Dat.* and *Acc.* *n* (Decl. IV.)

der Balken beam (timber)	der Karpfen carp
der Frieden peace	der Namen name
der Funken spark	der Samen seed
der Fußstapfen foot step	der Schaden injury
der Gedanken thought	der Schatten shade
der Gefallen favour	der Schlitten sledge
der Glauben faith	der Willen will
der Haufen heap	

28. *Names of countries, towns, rivers, mountains, &c.* (if not *fem.*) add to the *Gen.* *s*, or (according to R. 24) to the *Gen.* *eß*, and to the *Dat.* *e*, always leaving the *Acc.* like the *Nom.* (for Names of Persons see Rs. 55-63).

FORMATION OF THE PLURAL.

29. Some words in Germ. do not distinguish the plur. from the sing. ; the majority however do it, either by changing the vowels *a*, *o*, *u* or *au* (not *eu*) of their root into *ä*, *ö*, *ü* or *äu*, or by adding a syll., or by both processes.

30. The syllables used to mark the plur. are *e*, *er*, *n* and *en* (see Rs. 21 and 22).

31. *Words alike in both genders.* The **MASC.** and **NEUT.** making the Gen. sing. in *s* enumerated under R. 23. (Exc. a few mentioned in R. 36, *d.*) Decl. I.

32. *Words which only change their vowel, without addition.* Decl. I.

*der Acker ploughed field	der Mangel want
der Apfel apple	der Mantel cloak
*der Boden loft	die Mutter mother
*der Bogen arch	*der Nabel navel
der Bruder brother	der Nagel nail
*der Garten garden	*der Ofen oven, stove
*der Hafen harbour	*der Pächter farmer
*der Hammel ram	der Sattel saddle
der Hammer hammer	der Schwager brother-in-law
der Handel dispute	der Schnabel beak
*der Laden shop	die Tochter daughter
der Kaffee barker	der Vater father
das Kloster convent	der Vogel bird
*der Kasten chest	der Wagen carriage, waggon.
*der Magen maw	

33. *Plur. in e without a change of vowel; Decl. II :*

a) All the substantives of the three genders not enumerated under Rs. 31, 32, 34, 35, 36 and 37; † especially the *Masc.* and *Neut.* with the following terminations, most of which are of foreign origin, and have the accent on the last syllable :

act	an	air	ēm
al	†ar	†at	†ent
amm	dr	ell	†et

* Those marked thus are by the best writers mostly used without the change of vowel especially those ending in *en*.—† Alphabetical lists of the monosyllabic substantives forming their plur. in *er* or *en*; as well as of the terminations of polysyllables will be found in the Appendix to the Exercises.—‡ These, when relating to persons, belong to R. 26 a.

eur	il or ill	ol or oll	ſal
içt	in	om	uct
ict	ing	on	ſut.
ier	iv	riç	

b) Those in *niß*, which are either Fem. or Neut.

c) Collectives and reiteratives formed from substantives or verbs, with the prefix *ge*, but *not* ending in *e*, *el* or *er*; e. gr. *das Gedicht* poem, fr. *dichten* to think intently, *das Geschenk* gift, fr. *ſchenken* to give.

34. *Plur. in e, with a change of vowels*, Decl. II.

a) All the monosyllabic FEM. formed by the changeable vowels, *a*, *o*, *u*, and *au*, and not belonging to R. 37, as forming their plur. in *en*.

b) The following Masc. and Neut., but principally Masc. :

N.B.—In polysyllabic words, it is the vowel of the last syllable which changes, as *Canal*, *Canäle*; double *a* and *o* are changed into *ä* and *ö*, as *Kal*, *Kele*; *Boot*, *Böte*.—If a monosyllable forms the last link of a comp. subst., the change of vowel is the same: *Baum*, *Bäume*; *Birnbaum* pear-tree, *Birnbäume*. Those marked * are also used without change.

der Kal eel	der Bart beard
der Abhang declivity	der Baß bass or base
der Ablaß absolution and others	der Bauch belly
in Gang and Laß	der Baum tree
der Abt abbot	der Biſchof bishop
der Altar altar	der Block block
der Antrag proposal, and	der Boç he-goat
others in Trag	das Boot boat
das Arsenal arsenal	der Brand conflagration
der Arzt physician	der Brauch custom
der Ast branch	der Buſch bush
der Aufruhr rebellion	der Canal canal
der Bach brook	der Capellan chaplain
der Balg skin (of small animals.)	der Cardinal cardinal
der Ball ball	der Caſtellan castellan
	das Chor chorus

der Choral choral	der Kamm comb
der Damm dike	der Kampf combat
der Dampf steam	der Karst mattock
der Darm gut	der Kauf purchase
der Diebstahl theft	*der Kauz odd fellow
der Druck pressure (in com- pounds)	der Klang sound
der Duft vapour	der Klotz lump
der Dunst vapour	der Klotz log
der Fall fall, case	der Knopf button
der Fang catch, (in comp.)	der Koch cook
der Fiscal attorney-general	der Kopf head
der Floh flea	der Korb basket
der Flor crape	der Krampf cramp
das Floß raft	der Kranz wreath
der Fluch curse	der Kropf wen, crop
der Flug flight	der Krug jug
der Fluß river	der Kuß kiss
der Frosch frog	der Laß boddice
der Fuchs fox	der Lauf course
der Fund finding	*der Magistrat magistrate
der Gang walk	der Markt market
der Gast guest	der Marschal marshal
der Gaul horse	der Morast morass
der Genuß enjoyment	der Muff muff
der Geruch smell	der Napf basin
der Gesang song	der Pack parcel
der Grund ground	der Palast palace
der Gruß greeting	der Papst pope
der Guß gush	der Pastor parson
der Hahn cock	der Paß pass
der Hals neck	der Pfloß plug
der Hof court	der Pflug plough
der Hut hat	der Plan plan
der Kahn boat	der Platz place
	*der Pocal cup

der Propst prebendary	der Schwank prank
der Puff blow	der Schwanz tail
der Rast edge	der Schwarm swarm
der Rath counsellor	der Schwung impulse
der Raum space	der Schwur oath
der Rausch intoxication	der Sohn son
der Rock coat	der Spaß joke
der Röst gridiron	der Spruch motto
der Rumpf body, trunk	der Sprung leap
der Saal hall	der Spund bung
der Sack sack	der Stab staff
der Saft juice	der Stall stable
der Sarg coffin	der Stamm stem
der Satz sentence	der Stand station
der Saum hem	der Stock stick
*der Schacht shaft (of a mine)	der Storch stork
der Schaft handle	der Stoß shock
der Schank tap	der Strang rope
der Schalk knave	der Strom stream
der Schall sound	der Strumpf stocking
der Schatz treasure	der Stuhl chair
der Schaum foam	der Sturm storm
der Schlaf temple (of the head)	der Sturz rapid fall
der Schlag blow	der Sumpf marsh
der Schlauch leather bag	der Tanz dance
der Schlund throat	der Thurm tower
der Schluß conclusion	der Ton tone
der Schmaus feast	der Topf pot
der Schopf tuft of hair	der Trank drink
der Schosß lap	der Traum dream
der Schrank closet	*das Tribunal tribunal
der Schurz apron	der Trog trough
der Schuß shot	der Trumpf trumps
der Schwamm sponge	der Vogt steward
der Schwan swan	der Vorwand pretext

der Wall rampart	der Zahn tooth
der Wanſt paunch	der Zaum bridle
der Wuſt pad	der Zaun hedge
der Wuſch wiſh	der Zopf queue
der Wurf throw	der Zug feature
der Wurm worm	der Zwang constraint

35. *Plur. in er with a change of vowels. (Decl. III.)*

a) All thoſe ending in thum; which change the vowel only in this affix, making it thümer: Herzogthum dukedom, Herzogthümer.

b) The following :

das Kaſſa carrion	das Gewand garment
das Advertiſſement advertise- ment	das Glas glaſs
das Amt office	das Glied limb
das Augenlid eye-lid	der Gott god
das Bad bath	das Grab grave
das Bild image	das Graſs graſs
das Blatt leaf	das Gut eſtate
der Böſewicht villain	das Haupt head, chief
das Brett board	das Hoſpital or Spital hoſpital
das Buch book	das Huhn fowl
das Cabinet cabinet	das Kalb calf
das Camiſol jacket	das Kind child
das Dach roof	das Kleid dreſs
das Irriſch ignis fatuus	das Korn grain
das Dorf village	das Kraut herb
das Ei or Ey egg	das Lamm lamb
das Fach compartment	das Lied ſong
das Faß caſk	das Loch hole
das Feld field	das Maul mouth (a nobler ex- preſſion is Mund)
das Geld money	das Neſt neſt
der Geiſt ſpirit	das Parlament parliament
das Gemach chamber	das Pfand pledge
das Gemüth diſpoſition	der Rand edge
das Geſchlecht ſex, gender	das Rad wheel
das Geſpenſt ghooſt	das Regiment regiment

das Reis twig	der Vormund guardian
das Rind heifer	der Wald forest
das Schloß lock, castle	das or der Wammes jacket
das Schwert sword	das Weib woman
das Testament testament	das Wort word
das Thal valley	der Wurm worm
das Volk people	

See also Rs. 38 and 39.

36. *Plural in n; without change of vowels.*

a) The MASC. of R. 25, having the singular cases also in n. (Decl. V.)

b) Ditto of R. 27, if the nominative does not end in n, (Decl. IV.)

If the *Nom.* ends in n, they are of Decl. I.

c) The FEM. ending in e, el, and er, (Decl. V.)

d) The following, which, as to the sing. belong to R. 23. (Decl. IV.)

das Auge, eye	der Muskel muscle
das Ende end	der Nachbar neighbour
das Erbe inheritance	der Pantoffel slipper
der Glitter tinsel	der See lake
der Gevatter god-father	der Stachel sting
der Fader rag	der Stiefel boot
der Lorbeer or Lorbeer laurel	der Vetter cousin

37. *Plur. in en; without change of vowels.*

a) The MASC. enumerated in R. 26, as making the sing. cases also in en (Decl. VI).

b) The MASC. in or (R. 23, c.) making the Gen. sing. mostly in s (Decl. IV).

c) The FEM. polysyllables terminating in an, dt, ei or ey, el, en, heit, it, in, inn, is, it, on, schaft, sicht, ung and ur. (V.)

d) The following :

N.B. Those marked † more frequently end in e, and make then their plur in n; and those with * form their nom. sing. occasionally in en, and belong then to Rs. 23 and 31 (Decl. I).—

die Art manner

die Au meadow

— die Bahn path	die Pflicht duty
die Bai, Bay bay	die Post post
† die Beicht confession	die Qual torment
† die Birn pear	die Saat seed
* der Brunn well	die Schar or Schaar host, troop
— die Bucht cave	† die Schicht layer
* der Buchstab letter (of the alphabet)	die Schlacht battle
die Chur electorate	* der Schreck fright
die Cur or Kur cure	die Schrift writing
* der Daum thumb	die Schuld debt
† die Dirn damsel	die Schur shearing
die Fahrt journey in a carriage or on water	die Spur trace
† die Fahrt track	† die Stirn forehead
* der Fels rock	die Streu litter
† die Fuhr waggon	die Sucht mania
die Flur plain	die That deed
die Fluth flood	† die Thür door
die Form form	die Tracht style of dress
die Fracht freight	die Trift pasture
die Frau lady	die Uhr time-piece
* der Gaum palate	die Vollmacht power of attorney
die Gluth glow	† die Wehr weapon
die Jagd chase	die Welt world
die Mauth custom-house	* der Zack prong
e) The following Masc. and Neutr. which form the Gen. Sing. in s or es. (Decl. IV.)	die Zahl number
† der Affect passion	(Decl. VI.)
† das Bataillon battalion	das Herz heart
† der Carolin a gold coin	das Hemd shirt
das Concerbat concordate	der Impost tax
der Consul consul	das Insect insect
das Gliedmaß limb	† der Juwel jewel
	das Ohr ear

† These substantives make also the plur. in e (R. 33).

der Patron patron	der Sporn spur
der Quast tassel	der Staat state
*der Rubin ruby	der Thron throne
der Quell fountain	der Unterthan subject
der Satyr satyr	das Weh woe
der Schmerz pain	der or das Zierath ornament

38. Substantives with different plurals.

a) Those ending in *el* or *er*, if masc. remain unaltered, (Decl. I.) and if fem. take *n* (Decl. V.) as *der Leiter* conductor, plur. *Leiter*; *die Leiter* ladder, pl. *Leitern*.

b) *Der Aspect*, views *Aspecte*, prospects (appearances) *Aspecten*
der Band, ties *Bande*, volumes *Bände* (das†) ribbands *Bänder*
die Bank, benches *Bänke*, banks *Banken*
der Bauer, peasants *Bauern*, builders *Erbauer*; (das) cages
Bauer

der Bogen, sheets of paper, bows *Bogen*, arches *Bögen*
der Bruch, fractions *Brüche*, (das) marshes *Brüche*
der Bund, alliances *Bünde*, (das) bundles *Bunde*
das Capital, capitals in architecture *Capitale*, in money *Capitäl*
talien

das Ding, things *Dinge*, things of which we do not chuse to
know the names, *Dinger*
der Fuß, feet *Füße*, feet in measurement, *Fuße*
das Gesicht, faces *Gefichter*, visions *Gefichte*
die Gift, gifts *Giften*, (das) poisons *Gifte*
der Laden, shutters *Läden*, shops *Läden*
das Licht, candles *Lichte*, lights *Lichter*
die Macht, powers *Mächte*, in compounds, as *Ohnmacht* swoon,
Mächten

das Mal or *Mal*, monuments *Mäler*, times, meals *Male*
der Mann, men *Männer*, vassals
der Marsch, marches *Märſche*, (die) marshes *Marsche*
der Mensch, men *Menschen*, wenches *Menscher*
der Mohr, negroes *Mohren*, bogs *Möhre*

† The introduction of the art. indicates that the word also differs in Gender (See R. 16).

das Rohr, tubes, canes Röhre, species of reed or cane Röhre
 die Sau, sows Säue, wild boars Saue
 der Schild, shields Schilde, (das) sign-boards Schilder
 die Schnur, tapes Schnüre, daughters-in-law Schnuren
 der Stahl, species of steel Stähle, as the name of a tool Stähle
 der Stift, pencils Stifte, (das) foundations Stifter
 der Strahl, rays Strahlen, in compounds Strahle
 der Strauß, nosegays Sträuße, ostriches Strauße
 das Stück, pieces Stücke, pieces of artillery Stücken
 der Thor, fools Thoren, (das) gates Thore
 der Zack, prongs Zacken, in compounds Zacke
 der Zoll, inches Zolle, tolls Zölle.

39. *Substantives which take one plural when they are used in a distributive sense, and another when employed collectively :*

das Bett bed, Betten beds ; Bette beddings
 der Dorn thorn, Dörner thorns ; Dorne species of thorns
 der Draht wire, Drähte wires ; Drahte species of wires
 das Holz wood, Hölzer pieces of wood ; Holze species of wood
 das Horn horn, Hörner horns ; Horne species of horn
 das Land country, Länder countries ; Lande distributively, also
 provinces e. gr. Gott ist der Herr aller Lande, God is the lord
 of all the earth ; Alle Lande huldigten dem Könige, all the pro-
 vinces did homage to the king
 der Ort place, Orter places ; Orte in a general sense : Ich habe
 ihn an allen Orten gesucht, I have looked for him in all places,
 i. e. every where.
 der Strauch shrub, Sträucher or er shrubs ; Strauche species of
 shrubs
 das Tuch cloth, Tücher cloths (handkerchiefs) ; Tuche species of
 cloth
 das Wort word, Wörter words, (Fr. mots) ; Worte discourse,
 (Fr. paroles).

40. Comp. words terminating with Mann, when applied

exclusively to males, make the plur. *Männer*, but if applied to people in general, change *Mann* into *Leute*. Thus *Ehemänner* means married men, *Kaufmänner* men-merchants, *Bettel-männer* men beggars, and *Eheleute* married people, *Kaufleute* merchants, *Bettelleute* beggars, without regard to sex.

At the same time the expressions *Amtmänner* bailiffs, *Hauptmänner* captains, *Staatsmänner* statesmen, *Kriegsmänner* military men &c. are more respectful than the same words with *Leute*.

41. *Substantives used only in the Singular.*

a) The names of metals, minerals and other substances (for the few Exc. see R. 39), as well as of many abstract terms, such as *Beute* booty, *Hunger* hunger, admit of no plural in either language.

b) Words of quantity, weight, and measure admit of no plur. if preceded by numbers; e. gr. *Zwei Rieß*, *drei Buch und vier Bogen Papier*, two reams, three quires, and 4 sheets of paper. *Fünf Bund Federn*, *jedes von sechs Duzend*, five bundles of pens, each of six dozen. *Sieben Mal acht*, seven times eight (like the French *fois*.) *Neun Stück* (or *Haupt*) *Rindvieh*, *jedes zehn Faust hoch*, nine heads of cattle, each ten hands high. *Das Regiment ist tausend Mann stark* the regiment is a thousand men strong. *Elf Stein schwer* eleven stone weight.

c) *Das Pfund* pound (sterling) also takes no plur. when preceded by numbers, but *Schilling* shilling and *Pfennig* penny take e.

d) Also *das Jahr* year, when followed by *alt* old, as *zwölft* (twelve) *Jahr alt*.

Otherwise these words take a plur. as: *Wie viele Pariser Fuße machen dreizehn Englische* how many Paris feet make thirteen English. *Es ist jetzt vierzehn Jahre* it is now fourteen years.

e) Most collectives commencing with *ge*, as *das Gemurmel* murmuring.

f) The following :

die Ankunft arrival

das Erbe inheritance

der Flor prosperity

die Flucht flight

die Gage salary

das Glück fortune

der Hafer oats

die Haft captivity

der Hang bent

der Hopfen hops

die Hut guard, pasture

der Jammer sorrow

der Kohl cabbage

die Kresse cress

die Kunde intelligence

der Lärm noise

der Lattich lettuce

der Lohn wages

der Mund mouth

die Mathematik mathematics

die Mechanik mechanics

der Sand sand

das Schilf reed

der Tadel censure

die Vernunft reason

das Zeug collection of tools, apparatus.

der Zwang restraint.

42. The following take the plural from other words :

der Bund alliance, Bündnisse

der Dank thanks, Dankfagungen

die Ehre honour, Ehrenbezeugungen

das Einkommen revenue, Einkünfte

die Furcht apprehension, Befürchtungen

die Gunst favour, Begünstigungen or Gunstbezeugungen

das Leben life, Lebensläufe from Lebenslauf course of life, or Lebensbeschreibungen biographies

die Liebe love, Liebschaften amours

das Lob praise, Lobeserhebungen or Lobreden panegyrics

der Lohn reward, Belohnungen

der Kummer sorrow, Kummer=nisse

der Mord murder, Mordthaten

der Rath counsel, Rathschläge (which has no Sing.)

der Streit contest, Streitigkeiten

der Tod death, Todesfälle

das Unglück misfortune, Unglücksfälle

der Unterricht instruction, Belehrungen or Unterweisungen.

der Urlaub furlough, Beurlaubungen

der Trost consolation, Tröstungen

der Zank quarrel, Zänkereien

der Zwist quarrel, Zwistigkeiten.

43. *Substantives used only in the plural :*

Ältern or Eltern parents	out regard to sex; the
Annaten first fruits	French <i>gens</i>)
Blattern small-pox	Masern measles
Brieffschaften documents	Molken whey
Erequien funeral service	Naturalien natural produce
Fasten lent	Rudeln vermicelli
Ferien vacations	Ostern easter
Gebrüder (a mercantile term, as die Gebrüder Baring, Bar- ing brothers	Pfingsten whitsuntide
Gefälle rents	Ränke tricks
Graupen grits	Repressalien reprisals
Hefen yeast	Rötheln measles
Hopfen hops	Schloßen hail
Insignien insignia	Spesen merchant's outlay
Kosten or Unkosten expenses	Sporteln fees
Kriegsläufe events of war	Treber lees
Leute people, (persons, with-	Trümmer ruins
Zeite	Weihnachten christmas
	Zeitläufe course of time

DECLENSION OF FOREIGN SUBSTANTIVES.

44. Substantives derived from Lat. and Greek, which lose their last syl. or change it into a German termination have been classed with German substs. Those which retain them are subject to the following rules.

45. In *us* and *is* (also those from modern languages ending in *s*) such as *Clericus*, *Arxis*, *Corps* are best left unaltered.

46. In *um*, they make the Gen. Sing. in *s* and change *um* into *en* in the plur.; e. gr.

das Individuum, des Individuums, die Individuen

das Repositorium, des Repositoriums, die Repositorien.

47. Some foreign words take *s*, (sometimes with an apostrophe before it) in both the gen. sing. and all the cases Plur. as in *Genies* geniuses, *Chefs* chiefs, *Banquiers*, *Klubs*, *Balcons*

(also *Balcone*) *Forb's*, *Ragouts*, *Papa's*, *Sopha's*, *Motto's*, *Rabi's*, *Uhu's* (owls) *Kolibri's*.—Also *die X's*, *D's*, *Ja's* (yes), *Benn's* (ifs), *Xber's* (buts) &c.

DECLENSIONS.

48. Embracing now the singular and plural in one view, we shall have the following six Declensions, divided into two branches, characterised by the *Gen. Sing.* of the one being *s* or *es*, and that of the other *n* or *en*.

. As the *FEM.* do not change in the sing. they are re-introduced here for the sake of uniformity and completeness; yet let it be observed that those which take no plural are of no declension.

Branch A.

Branch B.

Singular.

M. F. and N.		M. and N.		M. and F.	
I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.	VI.
N. —	—	—	—	—	—
G. —s	—(e)s *	—(e)s	—s, (e)s, ns	—n	—en
D. —	—(e)	—(e)	—(e), n	—n	—en
A. —	—	—	n	—n	—en

Plural.

change of vowels				no change	
N. —	—e	—er	—n, en	—n	—en
G. —	—e	—er	—n, en	—n	—en
D. —n	—en	—ern	—n, en	—n	—en
A. —	—e	—er	—n, en	—n	—en

49. DECLENSION I.

Includes the substantives mentioned under *Rs.* 23, (27 if ending in *n*), 31 and 32.

Sing. N. D. and A. alike; Gen. *s*.

* The brackets joined to the *e*, here or in other parts of the book, indicated that the letter may be omitted.

Plur. N. G. and A. like Nom. Sing. Dat. n, (if the nom. does not end so); the few of R. 32 changing their vowels.

EXAMPLES.

Singular.

N. Der Vater,	die Mutter,	das Muster,	the father, mother, pattern.
G. Des Vater s,	der Mutter,	des Muster s,	of the &c.
D. Dem Vater,	der Mutter,	dem Muster,	to the &c.
A. Den Vater,	die Mutter,	das Muster,	the &c.

Plural.

N. & A. die Väter,	die Mütter,	die Muster,	the fathers, &c.
G. der Väter,	der Mütter,	der Muster,	of the,
D. den Väter n,	den Mütter n,	den Muster n,	to the,

50. DECLENSION II.

Includes the substs. of three genders enumerated under Rs. 33 and 34 and included among those of R. 24.

Sing. N. and A. alike; Gen. s or es; Dat. e, or like the Nom.

Plur. N. G. and A. e; Dat. en.—Those of R. 34 changing their vowels.

EXAMPLES.

Singular.

N. der Baum,	die Wand,	das Kreuz,	the tree, wall cross.
G. des Baum es,	der Wand,	des Kreuz es,	of the, &c.
D. dem Baum e,	der Wand,	dem Kreuz e,	to the, &c.
A. den Baum,	die Wand,	das Kreuz,	the, &c.

Plural.

N. and A. die Bäume, die Bände, die Kreuze, the trees,
&c.

G. der Bäume, der Bände, der Kreuze, of the.

D. den Bäumen, den Bänden, den Kreuzen, to the, &c.

51. *DECLENSION III.*

Includes the substs. mentioned under R. 35, comprising part of those of R. 24.

Sing. N. and A. alike. Gen. s or es, Dat. e, or like the nom.

Plur. N. G. and A. er, D. ern: with change of vowels.

EXAMPLES.

Singular.

N. der Mann, das Buch, das Kind, the man, book,
child.

G. des Mannes, des Buches, des Kindes, of the, &c.

D. dem Manne, dem Buche, dem Kinde, to the, &c.

A. den Mann, das Buch, das Kind, the, &c.

Plural.

N. and A. die Männer, Bücher, Kinder, the men,
books, children, &c.

G. der Männer, Bücher, Kinder, of the, &c.

D. den Männern, Büchern, Kindern, to the, &c.

52. *DECLENSION IV.*

Includes: a) The *Masc.* in or of R. 23 c; der Tutor, &c.

b) The *Masc.* of R. 26 d; der Kamerab, &c.

c) The *Masc.* of R. 27, if they make the Nom. in e; der Balle, &c.; otherwise they are of Decl. I.

d) The *Masc.* and *Neut.* of R. 36 d; das Auge, &c.

e) The *Masc.* and *Neut.* of R. 37 e; der Affect, &c.

Sing. N. and A. alike ; Gen. *s* after a short syl. and *es* (with the Dat. generally in *e*) after monosyllables, and words closing with a long syl.—Those of R. 27 make the Gen. in *nſ*, and the Dat. and Acc. in *n*.

Plur. In all cases, *n* at the end of a word with a short syl. and *en* after all others.

EXAMPLES.

Masc. *Singular.*

N. der Autor,	Funte,	Zuwel, the author, spark, jewel.
G. des Autor <i>s</i> ,	Funte <i>nſ</i> ,	Zuwel (<i>e</i>) <i>s</i> , of the author, &c.
D. dem Autor,	Funte <i>n</i> ,	Zuwel (<i>e</i>), to the author, &c.
A. den Autor,	Funte <i>n</i> ,	Zuwel, the author, &c.

Plural.

All cases. Autor *en*, Funt *en*, Zuwel *en*, authors, &c.

Neut. *Singular.*

N. and A. das Auge.	Insect	Dhr, the eye, insect, ear.
G. des Auge <i>s</i> ,	Insect <i>es</i> ,	Dhr <i>es</i> , of the, &c.
D. dem Auge,	Insect <i>e</i> ,	Dhr <i>e</i> , to the, &c.

Plural.

All cases. Auge *n*, Insect *en*, Dhr *en*, eyes, &c.

N. and A. Das Herz heart Gen. Herzens. Dat. Herzen.
Plur. in all cases Herzen.

53. DECLENSION V.

Includes the MASC. and FEM. in *e*, and the FEM. in *el* and *er*, (Rs. 25 and 36 *a* and *c*.)

Sing. (Masc.) Gen. Dat and Acc. *n*.

Plur. (Masc. and Fem.) All cases, n. No change of vowels.

EXAMPLES.

Singular.

N. der Knabe,	die Amme,	Schwester,	the boy, nurse, sister.
G. des Knaben,	der Amme,	Schwester,	of the boy, &c.
D. dem Knaben,	der Amme,	Schwester,	to the boy, &c.
A. den Knaben,	die Amme,	Schwester,	the boy, &c.

Plural.

All cases. Knaben, Amme n, Schwester n, the boys, &c.

54. DECLENSION VI.

Includes those of Rs. 26 and 37 a, c, and d.

Sing. (MASC.) Gen. Dat. and Acc. en.

Plur. (MASC. and FEM.) all cases en; no change of vowels.

EXAMPLES.

Singular.

N. der Graf	Gossack	die Gräfinn (R. 14.)	Frau the count, Cossack, count- tess, lady
G. des Grafen	Gossack en	der Gräfinn	Frau of the, &c.
D. dem Grafen	Gossack en	der Gräfinn	Frau to the, &c.
A. den Grafen	Gossack en	die Gräfinn	Frau the, &c.

Plural.

All cases Grafen Gossack en Gräfinn en Frau en counts, Cossacks, countesses, ladies

NAMES OF PERSONS.

Singular.

55. They may be used with the def. article ; in which case they remain undeclined, in the singular.

56. *Without article* they are declined, without regard to gender, viz: the *Gen.* taking s, es, or enſ, and the *Dat.* and *Acc.* (which two however often remain better undeclined) in n or en.

57 The *Gen.* adds 's to all names ; Exc. those ending in f, ff, ſ, ſch, r, or z, which take enſ ; and the fem. in e, which add nſ.

58. The *Dat.* and *Acc.* (if declined) are formed in all names ending with a short syl. with n, and in those of one syl. or ending in a long one, with en.

59. Those ending in a, generally change a in the *Gen.* into enſ, and in the *Dat.* and *Acc.* into en.

60. Greek and Latin names used to be generally declined in the Latin manner, but this practice is retained with very few, such as *Ieſuſ Chriſtuſ*, *Gen.* *Ieſu Chriſti*, *Dat.* *Ieſu Chriſto*, *Acc.* *Ieſum Chriſtum* ; and principally in the *Gen.* as *Pauli Briefe* Paul's Epistles, *daſ Evangelium Johanniſ* the gospel of St. John. But we may also say *Pauluſ Briefe*, *Phädruſ* (for *Phädri*) *Fabeln* Phaedrus' fables.

Plural.

61. Used figuratively, they may be employed in the plural ; e. gr. There are no Miltons in our age.

62. In Germ. those which end in el, en, and er, (like the com. nouns of Decl. 1) take no sign of plural ; others, if ending in a vowel, take n, and if ending in any other manner, e. Those which do not end in n add this letter in the *Dat* but no change of vowel ever takes place in them. Some in

o, make the plural in *ne*, D. *nen*.—Some foreign names make it in *s*.

N.B. The use of the article does not dispense with the plural formations.

63. Care must be taken not to confound the additional letters with the names themselves, therefore it is best to place an apostrophe before them, especially in names which are not generally known, or which might be otherwise mistaken e. gr. *Schulze's* for *Schulz'es*. Nor should the ear be offended by any harshness of sound; and this may be avoided by the use of the article, e. gr. for *Titusens Güte* Titus' goodness, *die Güte des Titus*, or also (leaving the *Gen.* to be inferred) *Titus Güte*.

EXAMPLES.

WITH THE ARTICLE.

WITHOUT ARTICLE.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N. <i>der Schiller</i>	<i>die Schiller</i>	<i>Schiller</i>	<i>Schiller</i>
G. <i>des Schiller</i>	<i>der Schiller</i>	<i>Schiller s</i>	<i>Schiller</i>
D. <i>dem Schiller</i>	<i>den Schiller n</i>	<i>Schiller n</i>	<i>Schiller n</i>
A. <i>den Schiller</i>	<i>die Schiller</i>	<i>Schiller n</i>	<i>Schiller</i>

Singular.

N. <i>Schulze</i>	<i>Leibniz</i>	<i>Louise</i>
G. <i>Schulze's</i>	<i>Leibniz ens</i>	<i>Louise ns</i>
D. <i>Schulze n</i>	<i>Leibniz en</i>	<i>Louise n</i>
A. <i>Schulze n</i>	<i>Leibniz en</i>	<i>Louise n</i>

Plural.

N. <i>Schulze n</i>	<i>Leibniz e</i>	<i>Louise n</i>
G. <i>Schulze n</i>	<i>Leibniz e</i>	<i>Louise n</i>
D. <i>Schulze n</i>	<i>Leibniz en</i>	<i>Louise n</i>
A. <i>Schulze n</i>	<i>Leibniz e</i>	<i>Louise n</i>

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. Johanna	Cato	Johann en	Cato ne
G. Johann enſ	Cato 'ſ	Johann en	Cato ne
D. Johann en	Cato n	Johann en	Cato nen
A. Johann en	Cato n	Johann en	Cato nen

Sing. N. D. and A. Robespierre
G. Robespierre's

Plur. for all cases. Robespierres.

ON ADJECTIVES.

64. German adjectives, (including participles) in their simple form, differ in nothing from adverbs, and most of them are also used as such, e. gr.

Der Knabe iſt gut und ſchreibt gut, the *boy* is *good* and writes *well*.

Seine Schweiſter iſt beſſer und ſchreibt beſſer, his *sister* is *better* and writes *better*.

65. Used as *predicates*, as in these examples, they are undeclined, that is to say, remain as they are found in the dictionaries.

66. Employed as *attributes*, i. e. before a substantive or when a subst. is understood after them, they agree with it, in gender, number and case; showing this agreement by the following terminations. (see Rs. 89 and 90.)

67. DECLENSION I.

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	
	M.	F.	N.	of the three
N.	—er	—e	—eſ	—e
G.	—eſ	—er	—eſ	—er
D.	—em	—er	—em	—en
A.	—en	—e	—eſ	—e

68. DECLENSION II.

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	
	M.	F.	N.	of the three
N.	—e(r)	—e	—e(ſ)	—en
G.	—en	—en	—en	—en
D.	—en	—en	—en	—en
A.	—en	—e	—e(ſ)	—en

69. The vocative is like the nominative.

N.B. Decl. I is like the def. article, exc. that the Nom. and Ac. in the Fem. sing. and in the plur. take *e*, instead of *ie*, and the Nom. and Ac. Neut. *eß* instead of *aß*. Decl. II makes the Nom. sing. of the three genders and the Acc. Fem. and Neut. in *e*, and all the other cases in *en*; the (*r*) and (*ß*) being added under certain circumstances (See R. 76.)

70. DECLENSION 1, is used when adjectives are *not* preceded by a declined definitive, i. e. an article or pronoun, as :

Singular.

N. Gut er Wein	gut e Speise	gut eß Selb	good wine, provision, money
G. Gut eß Weines ⁹	gut er Speise	gut eß Selbes	of good, &c.
D. Gut em Weine	gut er Speise	gut em Selbe	to good, &c.
A. Gut en Wein	gut e Speise	gut eß Selb	good, &c.

Plural.

N. Gut e Weine	gute Speisen	gut e Selber	good wines, &c.
G. Gut er Weine	gut er Speisen	gut er Selber	of good, &c.
D. Gut en Weinen	gut en Speisen	gut en Selbern	to good, &c.
A. Gut e Weine	gut e Speisen	gut e Selbe	good, &c.

71. In the same manner are also declined.

a) The def. art. with the variations mentioned in the N.B. to R. 69.

(b) *The Possessive pronouns* : *Meiner*, &c.)

c) *The Demonstrative* : *Dieser* this and *jener* that.

⁹ The *ß* of the Gen. is changed into *n*, when the subst. forms this case in *ß*, as *guten Weines*, for *guteß*; and the *m* of the Dat. also turned into *n*, if the adj. ends in *m*, as *mit lahmen* (for *lahmem*) *Fuße* with lame foot.

If several adjectives in the Gen. sing. or plur. or in the Dat. sing. succeed each other, the first only takes *eß*, *er*, or *em*, and the following *en*, e. gr. *guteß, alten, Westindischen Rums*, of good, old West-Indian rum.

d) *The Relative and Interrogative* : Welcher ; wer, &c.

e) *The Indefinite pronouns* : anderer, einer, keiner, jeder, jedweder, jeglicher and mancher.

72. When preceded by a cardinal number, the *undeclined* numerals viel¹⁰ much, wenig little, few, mehr¹¹ more, allerhand or allerlei various, all sorts of, the adjective follows this decl. ; as it also does after a pers. pron. (when the dat. however generally takes n.) Ex :

Mehr gut=er Wein more good wine.

Viel neu=es Papier much new paper.

Allerlei erfreulich=e Begebenheiten various pleasant events.

Drei Englisch=e Bücher three English books.

Ich, arm=er Knabe I, poor boy.

Mir, arm=en Kinde to me, poor child.

Dich, edel=e Mädchen thee, generous girl.

73. The following do not take the *er* of the *Nom. Masc.* and *es* of the *Nom.* and *Acc. Neut.* when they are conjunctives, *i. e.* placed before a substantive (whether there be any adjectives intervening or not), but retain them when they are absolute, *i. e.* the subst. to which they relate being understood.

a. The *poss. pron.* mein, dein, sein, ihr, unser, euer.

b. The *negative* kein no.

c. The *indef. art. or pron.* ein a or one. Ex :

Hier ist mein Lehrer und dein=er, here is my teacher and thine.

Da ist sein Haus und unser=es, there is his house and ours.

Hier ist ein Brief und da ist ein=er, here is a letter and there is one.

Dieses ist kein Buch, und jenes ist kein=es, this is no book, and that is none.

¹⁰ Viel and wenig are undeclined only in a collective sense, thus we say : viel Menschen essen mehr als wenig Menschen many people eat more than few ; but wenig=e Menschen können so viel=es essen, few people can eat so many (*i. e.* such a variety of) things.

¹¹ Mehre or mehrere signifies several.

74. **DECLENSION II** is used when the adjective is preceded by a declinable definitive, as :

Singular.

N. der gut e Fürst	die gut e Fürstinn	das gut e Auge
		the good prince, princess, eye
G. des gut en Fürsten	der gut en Fürstinn	des gut en Auges
D. dem gut en Fürsten	der guten Fürstinn	dem gut en Auge
A. den gut en Fürsten	die gut e Fürstinn	das gut e Auge

Plural.

N. die gut e n Fürsten,	die gut en Fürstinnen,	die gut en Augen
		the good princes, &c.

The other cases the same.

75. In the same manner are also declined :

a) *The absolute poss. prons. taking the article* : der meinige, &c.

b.) *The absolute demonstrative* : derjenige, derselbe, derselbige, &c.

c.) *The indef. prons.* der eine, der andere.

76. Adjectives preceded by any of the words enumerated in R. 73. are formed after Decl. II ; but they add respectively to the *Nom. Masc.* and to the *Nom.* and *Acc. Neut.* the *r* and *s* shown in the paradigm between brackets ; and wanted in the declension of the words mentioned in R. 73 :

Mein lieb=er Vetter und sein neu=es Werk, my dear cousin and his new work ;

Er hat kein bar=es Geld, he has no ready money ;

Es war ein herrlich=es Unternehmen, it was a glorious undertaking.

77. Adjs. ending in *er*, formed from names of towns ; viel, wenig, mehr, allerhand and allerlei, (see R. 72 and N. 10) ;

also ganz all (whole), and halb half, (when not preceded by an art. or pron.), are undeclined.

Ein Londoner a Londoner.

Die Londoner Bürger, the citizens of London.

Ganz Europa und halb Amerika, all Europe and half America.

78. The cardinal numbers are undeclined in the *Nom. Gen.* and *Acc.* zwei and drei alone taking in the *Gen. er*, if not preceded by an art. or pron.; but they all take en in the *Dat.*, if they are not followed by a substantive.

Die zwei Soldaten verdanken ihr Leben dem Muth dreier Kameraden the two soldiers thank (i. e. are indebted for) their life (lives) to the courage of three comrades.

Ich gab es vieren I gave it to four (persons understood).

79. Ordinal numbers are declined like other adjs.

80. In familiar conversation, adjs. are often left undeclined: schön Wetter fine weather, for schönes.

81. When two or more attributes are stated as co-existent in a subst. it is not uncommon to suppress the declension of the first: ein schwarz und weißer Hund, a black and white poodle.

82. Adjs. ending in el, en or er, drop this e, when another e is added:

Der Saft ist bitter, aber die Schale ist bitterer, the juice is bitter, but the peel is bitterer.

Bittere Mandeln bitter almonds.

ON THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

83. Adjs. mark their degrees, as in English, (but with much fewer exceptions¹⁸) by r, er, st and est.

¹⁸ Such as the following (which are also never used as attributes) make the comp. with mehr more, and the superl. with am meisten most.

bereit ready,	feind hostile,	gar done, ready.
gung und gebe current,	ingebent mindful,	gehasig hating.

84. The *comparative*, when the adj. ends in *e*, is made by *r*; otherwise by *er*.

85. The *superlative*, in adjs. ending in *b, d, e, et, end, f, g, l, m, n, r*, is generally made in *st*, while the other terminations, to avoid harshness, mostly make it in *est*.

As böse bad,	böser worse,	bösest worst.
grob coarse,	gröber coarser,	gröbste coarsest.
hart hard,	härter harder,	härteste hardest.
tugendhaft virtuous,	tugendhafter more virtuous,	tugend=
haftest most virtuous.		

86. Radical adjs. having the vowels *a, o, u*, (not *au*.) in their root change them in the comparative and superl. as in *grob* and *hart*.

EXCEPTIONS.

barsch harsh,	blank bright,	bunt variegated.
fade insipid,	falsch } fallow,	falsch false.
flach flat,	fröh merry,	hohl hollow.
hold favorable,	tahl bald,	lahm lame.
laß tired,	los } loose,	matt faint.
moſch rotten,	nackt naked,	platt flat.
plump clumsy,	raſch fast,	roh raw.
rund round,	ſacht slow,	ſanft soft.
ſatt satisfied,	ſchlaff slack.	ſchlank slim.
ſchroff steep,	ſtarr stiff,	ſtolz proud.
ſtraff tight,	ſtumm dumb,	ſtumpf blunt.
toß mad,	voll full,	waßr true.
wund sore,	zähm tame.	

Bange sad, blaß pale, dumm stupid, glatt smooth, ſarg

getroß of good cheer,	gram bearing hatred,	irre wrong, astray.
kund known,	leid distressing,	nüt useful.
e. gr. bereit, mehr bereit, am meisten bereit.		

stingy, knapp tight, naß wet, and gesund healthy, are doubtful.

87. IRREGULAR AND IMPERFECT FORMATIONS.

Posit.	Compar.	Super.
a) (wanting)	(wanting)	der erste first.
gut good,	besser better,	der beste best.
viel much,	mehr more,	der meiste most.
groß great,	größer greater,	der größte (or größteste) greatest.
klein* small,	minder less,	der mindeste least.
hoch high,	höher ¹³ higher,	der höchste highest.
naß near,	näher nearer,	der nächste next.

b) Außer outer, äußerste outmost—inner inner, innerste innermost—ober upper, oberste uppermost—unter under, unterste lowermost—vorder fore, vorderste foremost—hinter hind, hinterste hindmost.

c) From erste and letzte (formed from the obsolete positive lat late) are made der erstere the former, and letztere latter.

88. *Most* after the INDEF. ART. (being the superl. absolute) is rendered by sehr very, höchst most highly, besonders particularly, or similar adverbs. As: ein höchst gelehrter Mann, a highly (or most) learned man.

89. The superlative is never used as a predicate, but the comparative, when used as such, remains unaltered; (R. 65).

Die Lilie ist schön, die Rose schöner, the lily is beautiful, the rose more so.

90. When used attributively the compar. and superl. are declined like the positive: (Rs. 65 and 66, &c.)

Eine schöner-e Rose a more beautiful rose

Die schönst-en Blumen the most beautiful flowers.

91. *As* and *than* are expressed by als:

* Also kleiner, der kleinste, in the sense of little.

¹³ Hoch also drops the c in the posit. when an e is added to it: der hohe Thurm the high tower.

As tall as I ; taller than my brother, so groß als ich ; größer als mein Bruder.

92. *The* as a sign of proportion is rendered in Germ. by je—je or je—desto ; as je trücker er ist, je heiteren ist er, the sicker he is, the more cheerful ; je arbeitamer sie sind, desto größer ihr Gewinn, the more industrious they are, the greater their gain.

So much the, um so.

93. Adjs. are used *substantively* (subject however to the adjct. declensions 67 and 68) :

a) In relation to human beings :

Der Gelehrte or ein Gelehrter the or a learned (man).

Die or eine Gelehrte the or a learned (woman.)

Die Gelehrten the learned (people).

Gelehrte learned people.

Der Bediente eines Gesandten, the servant (serving man) of an ambassador (i. e. sent man).

Die Bedienten der Gesandten the servants of the ambassadors.

b) In relation to qualities, without a reference to the things to which they adhere¹⁴.

Das Große im Menschen that which is great (greatness) in man.

Er hat sein Bestes gethan he has done his best.

Ich habe sowohl Gutes als Böses erfahren I have experienced both good and evil.

Thus we distinguish der Schöne the handsome man, die Schöne the handsome woman, die Schönen the handsome people, das Schöne that which is beautiful.

94. *One*, following an adjective, is never translated ; e. gr. have you a pen ? Yes, here is a good one, Haben Sie eine Feder ? Ja, hier ist eine gute.

¹⁴ Some, especially those of colours, are declined like *substs.* of decl. II, when they signify a substance : Französisches Schwarz, French lack ; die Güte des Berliner Blaus the goodness of Prussian blue.

THE PRONOUNS.

95 PERSONAL, OR SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS.

FIRST PERSON.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N. Ich I	Wir we
G. Meiner of me	unser of us
D. Mir to me, to myself	uns to us, to ourselves
A. Mich me, myself	uns us, ourselves

SECOND PERSON.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Du thou	Ihr you
Deiner of thee	Euer of you
Dir to thee, to thyself	Euch to you, to yourselves
Dir the, thyself	Euch you, yourselves.

THIRD PERSON.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Of the 3 Genders.</i>
N. Er he ¹⁶	Sie she	Es it	Sie they
G. Seiner ¹⁶ of him	Ihrer of her	Seiner of it	Ihrer of them
D. Ihm to him	Ihr to her	Ihm to it	Ihnen to them
A. Ihn him	Sie her	Es it	Sie them.
D. and A. Sich to himself, to itself, to herself, to themselves; himself, herself, itself, themselves. ¹⁷			

¹⁶ As the pron. must agree in gender with the person or thing it represents, *it* is also rendered by *er* and *sie*, in reference to things of the masc. or fem. gender, and again *he* and *she* by *es* with regard to persons or animals of the neut. gender; e. gr. Wo ist der Stock? where is the stick? Er ist hier it is here. Ist das Mädchen im Hause? is the girl in the house? Ja, es ist im anderen Zimmer yes, she is in the other room. Yet it is no fault to use the natural gender with regard to persons, and say in instances like the last *sie* ist.

¹⁶ Poetically *mein*, *dein*, *sein*.

¹⁷ If a particular emphasis is required, *selbst* is added to the pronouns or substant., as *der Mann selbst* the man himself, *ich selbst* I myself, *der Mensch liebt sich selbst am meisten*, man loves himself most.

96. The *Gen.* of these pronouns is not used, except in connexion with numbers (e. gr. *ihrer zwei* two of them), or with certain adjs. and verbs requiring the genitive case. In other instances *of* before a pers. pron. is rendered by *von* or *unter*; e. gr. I speak of him *ich rede von ihm*. I know not one of them, *ich kenne nicht einen von (or unter) ihnen*.

97. To avoid ambiguity *derselbe* the same (a demonstr. pron.) is often substituted for the personal:

Der Fremde begegnete einem Officier, und da derselbe nicht ausweichen wollte, the stranger met an officer, and as he would not give way &c. (in which phrase *er* would leave it in doubt whether the stranger or the officer was meant).

We also say: *Kennen Sie dieselbe?* do you know her? to avoid the recurrence of *Sie* *se*.

98. *Es* is never placed after a preposition, nor is *ihm* in relation to things; as substitutes we employ the compounds *daran* thereat, *darauf* thereon, (See R. 195.)

ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

99. *Conjunctive*

i. e. those placed before Substs. Declined according to Rs. 70 and 73.

Masc	Fem.	Neut.	Plur.	
Mein	Mein e	Mein	Mein e	my
Dein	Dein e	Dein	Dein e	thy
Sein	Sein e	Sein	Sein e	his
Ihr	Ihr e	Ihr	Ihr e	her
Sein	Sein e	Sein	Sein e	its
Unser	Unser e	Unser	Unser e	our

Euer*	Euer e	Euer	Euer e	your
Ihr	Ihr e	Ihr	Ihr e	their.†

N.B.—Observe that *sein* refers to a possessor of the masculine or neuter gender, and *ihr* to one of the feminine, and that the terminations vary according to the gender and number of the person or object possessed; moreover, that all pronouns, as well as articles, must be repeated before successive substantives differing in gender, number, or case, e. gr. *sein Vater und seine Mutter, ihr Bruder und ihre Schwester*, his father and mother, her brother and sister.

100. The pers. pron. in the *Dat.* with the def. art. is used instead of the possess. when speaking of any thing about the body of, or closely connected with, an individual:

Er hat sich in den Finger geschnitten, he has cut his finger.

Ich zerbrach mir das Bein, I broke one of my legs.

Der Hund zerriß ihm den Rock, the dog tore his coat.

Man hat ihr die Tochter (or even ihr ihre) Tochter entführt, some one has carried off her daughter. (See Synt. of verbs).

101. The conj. poss. pron. is supplied by the def. art. when there can be no doubt of the person to whom the object belongs:

Ich werde es dem Vater sagen, I shall tell it to my father.

Stecken Sie es in die Tasche, put it in your pocket.

102. *Absolute*†.

I. Declined after R. 70.

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Plur. of the 3 genders.
Mein er	Mein e	Mein es	Mein e mine

* The *e* before the *r* in *unser* and *euer* may be dropped, when the pronoun is declined; as *unsre, eure, &c.*—

† Example of Declension:

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Plur.
N.	mein	mein e	mein	mein e my
G.	mein es	mein er	mein es	mein er of my
D.	mein em	mein er	mein em	mein en to my
A.	mein eu	mein e	mein	mein e my.

† Used in reference to a preceding substantive.

Dein er	Dein e	Dein es	Dein e	thine
Sein er	Sein e	Sein es	Sein e	his
Ihr er	Ihr e	Ihr es	Ihr e	hers
Sein er	Sein e	Sein es	Sein e	its
Unser er	Unser e	Unser es	Unser e	ours
Euer er	Euer e	Euer es	Euer e	yours
Ihr er	Ihr e	Ihr es	Ihr e	theirs

II. Declined after R. 74.

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Plur. of the 3 genders
Der mein e	die mein e	daß mein e	die mein en mine
Der dein e	die dein e	daß dein e	die dein en thine
Der sein e	die sein e	daß sein e	die sein en his
Der ihr e	die ihr e	daß ihr e	die ihr en hers
Der fein e	die fein e	daß fein e	die fein en its
Der unser e	die unser e	daß unser e	die unser en ours
Der euer e	die euer e	daß euer e	die euer en yours
Der ihr e	die ihr e	daß ihr e	die ihr en theirs

III. Der meinig=e die meinig=e daß meinig=e die meinig=en, &c., like der meine, &c.

103. Of these, the first is generally used after the verb, *seyn*, in the sense of belonging to: *daß ist meiner* &c.; the 2nd in the familiar style and in higher poetry; and the 3rd in polished conversation:

Sie haben keinen Regenschirm; meiner (or der meinige) steht ihnen zu Diensten. They have no umbrella; mine is at their service.

104. *Die Meinigen, Deinigen, &c.* also signifies those belonging to me, to thee, &c., as relations, servants, soldiers or adherents of any kind. *Daß Meinige, Deinige, &c.*, is used in the sense of my, thy property.

105. *Of mine, &c.* after a subst., employed instead of the conj. pron. before the subst. is rendered by *meiner* or *von meinen, &c.*:

Einer meiner Freunde or von meinen Freunden a friend of mine (for one of my friends).

106. In addressing people, we use :

a) The *second pers. sing.* between near relations, intimate friends, and to confidential servants.

b) The *second pers. plur.* to mankind in general, towards those who are addressed in the sing. by du, and to inferiors in the sing. as well as in the plural.

c) The *third pers. sing.* towards servants and inferiors: Peter, bring Er mir Wasser, Peter, bring me water; Maria, hat Sie mein Feuer angezündet? Mary, have you lighted my fire?

d) The *third pers. plur.*, in addressing superiors, or equals in a respectable rank of life :

· Haben Sie gesprochen? have you spoken?

Ich habe Ihren Brief erhalten, I have received your letter.

Also towards very high personages in speaking of them :

Seine Majestät haben es gewollt, H. M. has wished it.

107. In formal language towards persons of very high rank, the expressions *Hochdieselben*, *Höchstdieselben*, *Allerhöchstdieselben*, are used for Sie, you (¹⁸).

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

108. *Conjunctive.*

Before substantives, or when substs. are understood :

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Plur.	
I.	Dieser	diese	dieses	diese	this
II.	Jener	jene	jenes	jene	that
III.	Der	die	das	die	this or that

Declined after R. 70.

109. Jen is never met with undeclined, except in *jenseits*,

¹⁸ For the sake of distinction, Er, Ihm, Ihn, Sein, Sie, Ihr, Ihnen, when used in addressing persons, are written and printed with a capital initial.

on the opposite side ; but *dies*, or, as it is generally written, *dieß*, is frequently (see R. 115).

110 *Der* is declined as follows :

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Plur. of 3 genders.
N.	<i>der</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>daß</i>	<i>die</i>
G.*	<i>dessen</i>	<i>deren</i>	<i>dessen</i>	<i>deren</i>
D.	<i>dem</i>	<i>der</i>	<i>dem</i>	<i>denen</i>
A.	<i>den</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>daß</i>	<i>die.</i>

111. *Absolute.*

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Plur.
I. <i>Derjenig e</i>	<i>diejenig e</i>	<i>dasjenig e</i>	<i>diejenig en</i>	
II. <i>Der, &c.</i> (declined as in R. 110).				
III. <i>Derseib e</i>	<i>dieseib e</i>	<i>dasseib e</i>	<i>dieseib en</i>	

Derjenige and *derseibe*, or *derseibige* are declined after R. 74.

112. The use of *derseibe* has already been explained in R. 97 ; *derjenige* or *der* is used either before a relative pron. or a Gen. case, or before subst. which are so followed, and is often translated by *he*, *she*, *it* or *they* ; the French *celui*.

Derjenige (or *der*, pronounced with more emphasis than the article) *welcher Ihnen dieses gesagt hat*, *he* who has told you this.

Diejenigen Leute, welche noch daran zweifelten, those people who yet doubted it.

Der, von welchem ich es hörte, mußte es wissen, *he* from whom I heard it, must have known it.

113. The pronominal Gen. of *der* viz. *dessen*, *deren*, &c. is used instead of the poss. pron. to avoid ambiguity.

Da er dem Knaben nicht glaubte, so fragte er *dessen* (for *seinen*) *Vater* ; as he did not believe the boy, he asked his (i. e. the boy's) father.

Sie erhält die Frau und deren (for *ihr*) *Kind*, she maintains the woman and her (i. e. the woman's) child.

114. This form is also used in preference to the possess.

* Poetically also in the Gen. Masc. and Neut. *deß* ; and *derer* for the Gen. Plur. before a relat. pron.

in speaking of things: die Papiere und deren (for ihr) Inhalt, the papers and their contents.

115. Pers., Poss., and Demonst. pronouns, like adjs., are *undeclined*, or *used in the neut. sing.*, when employed as predicates.

Es war ein Mann, or ein Mann war es, *it was a man.*

Es waren Männer, or Männer waren es, *it were men* (the verb agreeing with the substantive).

Es waren sie, or sie waren es, *it were they, or they were it.*

Die Tinte ist mein, the ink is mine.

Die Federn sind mein, or mein sind die Federn the pens are mine.

Dies (dies) or jenes ist mein Bruder this or that is my brother.

Dies (dies) sind die Schulknaben this (*these*) are the schoolboys.

When however emphasis is intended, they agree in gender and number with the subst. to which they refer :

Sie sind die Männer, *they are the men.*

Dieser ist nicht mein Kutscher, sondern jener, *this is not my coachman, but that.*

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

116. *Conjunctive.*

Declined after R. 70.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Plur. of the 3 genders.
I	Welcher	welche	welches	welche who, which
II	Der, &c. (Declined like the demonstr. der.) who, which			

117. The *Gen* of *der*, being more distinct, is preferable to that of *welcher*, the pron. agreeing with the possessor.

Der Baum, dessen Schatten uns erfreut, the tree whose shade delights us.

Die Leute, deren Stolz ihn empörte, the people whose pride revolted him.

118. This pron. governs the verb only in the third pers. therefore, if the verb is to agree with the antecedent,

whether of the first or second pers., the antecedent must be repeated after the relat. :

Ich, der ich es wußte, I who (I) knew it.

Du, der du alles weißt, thou who (thou) knowest every thing.

119. *Der, die, das, &c.* is substituted for *welcher*, for the sake of euphony ; and in phrases as the foregoing, this form is particularly preferred.

120. *Absolute.*

a) Relating to persons.

b) Relating to things.

N. *wer* who

was what

G. *wessen* whose

wessen or *von was* of what

D. *wem* to whom

wem to what

A. *wen* whom

was what

121. *Wer* and *was* are used without an antecedent ; but the demonstr. to which they relate is often placed after them, before the second member of the phrase :

Wer es gesehen hat, (der) glaubt es, he who has seen it, believes it; instead of Derjenige glaubt es, welcher, &c. or derjenige, welcher es gesehen hat, glaubt es.

Ich weiß, was er will I know, what he wants.

122. *Wer, wessen, &c.* followed by *auch*, are rendered by *whoever, whose soever, to whomever, &c.*

Wer es auch sey, whoever it may be.

123. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Plur.
I.	<i>Welch er</i>	<i>welch e</i>	<i>welch es</i>	<i>welch e</i>
II.	<i>Wer, &c.</i>		<i>was</i>	
III.	<i>Welch, was für</i> often followed by <i>ein</i> or <i>einer</i> .			

Welcher, wer and *was* are declined as they are as relatives.

124. *Welcher, &c.* is placed before *substs.* and in relation to them.

125. *Wer* and *was* are used when the *gend.* and *number* of the objects of inquiry are unknown :

Wer hat es gesagt? who has said it ?

Wessen Pferde sind das ? whose horses are these ?

Wem gaben Sie es ? to whom did you give it ?

Wen wollen Sie sehn ? whom do you want to see ?

Was hat er geschrieben ? what has he written ?

126. Was für, means what sort of, *what*, and is used for substances in the sing. and for individuals in the plur. For individuals in the sing. we say, was für ein, or einer, &c.

Was für Brod ist das ? what bread is that ?

Was für Pferde sind das ? what horses are these ?

Was für ein Buch lesen Sie ? what book do you read ?

Ein Französisches, a French one.

Was für eines ? what sort of a one ?

127. Was für ein, or welch ein and was für are used in exclamations :

Was für ein, or welch ein Mann ! Was für Leute !

128. Welche is commonly used for some, instead of einige or deren : Ich habe welche, I have some.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS*.

129. Undeclined.

Man one, means a person or more not distinctly known, or to be stated, and governs the verb in the 3rd pers. sing.¹⁹. (the French on).

Selbst, self or same, occurs by itself and in compounds.

Welch, followed by ein, was für, welch (See Rs. 127 and 130.)

Wo, where, da there, compounded with prepositions (Rs. 98 and 195.)

Wer, instead of welcher, who or which.

Etwas or was, something, some.

Nichts, nothing.

* Most of these are mere adjectives, and are only regarded as pronouns, on account of their frequent use without substantives.

¹⁹ One's, people's, to one's &c. are expressed by seines, seiner, seines, seinem, seiner, &c.

130. *Declined after R. 70, Decl. 1 of adjs.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	
Al er	all e	all es	all e all
And er	ander e	ander es	ander e other
Ein er	ein e	ein es	no plur. one
Kein er	kein e	kein es	kein e none ^{so}
Jed er	jed e	jed es	} no plur. each, or every one
Jedwed er	jedwed e	jedwed es	
Jeglich er	jeglich e	jeglich es	
Manch er	manch e	manch es	manche many a one or many.
Solch er	solch e	solch es	solch e such.

N.B. Solch is undeclined before ein, and we may say solch ein Mann for ein solcher Mann.

131. *Declined after R. 74, Decl. II of adjs.*

Der eine the one, der andere the other.

132. *With the Indef. Art., after R. 74 and 76.*

Ein anderer another, ein einziger one or a single, kein einziger none, not one, ein jeder every one.

133. *Used in the plural only, some also in the neut. gend. (R. 93)*

Beide both persons, beides both things, einige or etliche some, a few, einiges some thing, viele many, vieles much, a great deal.

134. N. Jemand some one

Niemand no one

G. Jemand es of some one

Niemand es of no one

D. Jemand en to some one

Niemand en to no one

A. Jemand en some one

Niemand en no one

135. N. D. & A. Jedermann

G. Jedermann es every one.

^{so} Not a, not one, not any. In interrogations, any is also rendered by kein : Have you any beer? Haben Sie kein Bier?

NUMBERS.

136. CARDINAL.	137. ORDINAL.
1 Ein, eins ²¹	1st erst e ²²
2 zwei or zwey	2nd zwei te or zweyte
3 drei or drey	3rd drit te
4 vier	4th vier te
5 fünf	5th fünf te
6 sechs	6th sechs te
7 sieben	7th sieben te
8 acht	8th acht e
9 neun	9th neun te
10 zehn	10th zehn te
11 elf, eilf	11th elf te, eilf te
12 zwölf	12th zwölf te
13 dreizehn	13th dreizehn te
14 vierzehn	14th vierzehn te
15 fünfzehn	15th fünfzehn te
16 sechzehn	16th sechzehn te
17 siebzehn or siebzehn	17th sieb(en)zehn te
18 achtzehn	18th achtzehn te
19 neunzehn	19th neunzehn te
20 zwanzig	20th zwanzig ste
21 ein und zwanzig ²³	21st ein und zwanzig ste

²¹ *Ein* is used in counting, without reference to an object. *Ein* is declined like the indef. art. See also R. 73.

²² The *Ordinals* (except *erste*, *britte*, *achte*, which are irregular) are formed by the addition of *t*, to *neunzehnte* inclusive; and by *st* from *zwanzigste* upwards; they are considered as adjectives, and are here presented with the termination *e*, as in the nom. sing. of declension II, since they are mostly used with the def. art. *der*, *die*, *das erste*; *des*, *der ersten*, *dem ersten*, &c. (R. 79.)

²³ Units are always placed before the tens.

22 zwei und zwanzig, &c.	22nd zwei und zwanzig ste, &c.
30 dreißig	30th dreißig ste
40 vierzig	40th vierzig ste
50 fünfzig	50th fünfzig ste
60 sechzig	60th sechzig ste
70 heb(en)zig	70th heb(en)zig ste
80 achtzig	80th achtzig ste
90 neunzig	90th neunzig ste
100 hundert	100th hundert ste
101 hundert und eins	101st hundert und erst e
200 zwei hundert	200th zwei hundert ste
1000 tausend	1000th tausend ste
1001 tausend und eins	1001st tausend und erst e
2000 zwei tausend	2000th zwei tausend ste
10,000 zehn tausend	10,000th zehn tausend ste

138. *Fractional numbers* are formed by the addition of *el* to the undeclined ordinals: das Drittel, $\frac{1}{3}$; das Zwanzigstel, $\frac{1}{20}$; drei Hundertstel, $\frac{1}{100}$.

139. *Distinctives* are made as follows:—*erstlich*, *erstens* or *zum ersten* firstly, *zweitens* or *zum zweiten* or *zum andern* secondly, *drittens* or *zum dritten* thirdly, *viertens* or *zum vierten* fourthly, &c.

140. *Partitives* are, *zwei und zwei*, *drei und drei*, two and two, three and three; *je eins*, *je zwei*, *je drei*, one, two, three at a time; or *every one*, *two*, or *three*, &c.

141. In speaking of halves, the word *halb* is joined to the *ordinal* form of the *next* number to that mentioned in English; as: *anderthalb* $1\frac{1}{2}$, (for *zweitehalb*), *dritthalb* $2\frac{1}{2}$, *viertethalb* $3\frac{1}{2}$, &c. a month and a half *anderthalb Monate*, four years and a half *ago* *vor fünftehalb Jahren*.

142. In speaking of the hour, *halb* is placed *before* the *next* number, which in this case is *cardinal*, as half past one *halb zwei*, half past two *halb drei*.

143. To denote *repetition*, *Mal* or *Mal* is used: ein *Mal*

or einmal once, *zwei Mal* or *zweimal* twice, *vielmals* (also *viele Male*) many times, &c.

144. To denote *variety* the cardinal number takes the termination *erlei* (the gen. before the old subst. fem. *Ei* or *Ey*) as: *einerlei* of one sort, *zweierlei* of two sorts, &c. *dreierlei Bänder* three sorts of ribbon, &c. also *mancherlei* of various sorts, *vielerlei* of many sorts, *keinerlei* of no sort.

145. *Einfach* or *einfältig* express the English *fold*, as *einfach*, *einfältig** simple, *zweifach*, *zweifältig* double or twofold, &c.

146. *Numeral Substantives* are: *die Ein*, *die Zwei*, *die drei*, &c. in card playing, *die Hälfte* the half, *das Paar* the pair, *das Duzend* the dozen, *die Fünfzehn* the fifteen, *das Schuß* the score, *das Hundert* the hundred, *das Tausend* the thousand, *die Million* the million.

ON THE VERBS.

147. Verbs in their form, are primitive, derivative, or compound; but the chief difference in their nature is, that they are either *transitive* or *intransitive*, which however makes no difference in their conjugation, Exc. in some of their compound tenses (see Rs. 163, &c.), and a few being irregular when intransitive, and regular when transitive.

N.B. There are also some called reflective, reciprocal and impersonal, which are explained in their places.

148 Verbs present themselves under the relations of moods, tenses and persons.

149. The *Moods* are: the Infinitive with the Participles, the Indicative, the Subjunctive, and the Imperative.

150. The *Tenses* are indicated, either by variations in the words themselves, (which at the same time point out the

* *Einfältig*, applied to persons, signifies silly.

Moods), and are then called *simple*; or by means of other verbs, called auxiliaries, and are then denominated *compound*.

151. The tenses in German are: in

the *Infinitive and Participles* (which have no variations with regard to persons) the Present and the Past, which are simple, with the exception of the Inf. Past;

the *Indicative*, two *simple*, viz. the Present and the Imperfect, and *four compound*, viz: the Perfect and the Pluperfect, the First Future and the second Future;

the *Subjunctive*, the same as the Indicative, with the addition of *two other compounds*, viz: the Conditional Present and the Conditional Past;

the *Imperative*, one *simple*, viz: the Present.

152. The *Persons* are the same as in English.

153. Presenting a verb in all its modifications is called its **CONJUGATION**. Anciently there were many such conjugations; but now most verbs are regulated after one form which is called the *Regular conjugation*, while those which still follow the ancient forms are called *Irregular*. The regular verbs, whatever their nature, are conjugated like *loben*; and the irregular as enumerated in the list p. 68 &c.

154. CONJUGATION OF THE REGULAR VERB AND OF THE MOST USUAL AUXILIARIES.

. Many of the persons being alike in the indic. and subj., where such is the case, the person is given but *once*, and placed in the centre of the column, while, when they differ, *the first presents the Indic. and the second the Subj.* e. gr. *Ich habe*, means I have and may have; *du hast* thou hast, *du habest* thou mayest have; *er hat* he has, *er habe* he may have; *wir haben* we have and may have, &c.

OBSERVE.—Also that the Nom. before several verbs is usually repeated but once; as: *Ich kam, sah, und siegte*, I came, saw, and conquered.

a) Simple Tenses.

INFINITIVE.

*Reg. Verb.**Auxiliary verbs.*to praise
lob ento have
habento be
Seynto become
Werden

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. lob end*
PAST. ge lob (e) t
praisedhab end †
ge hab t
hadsey end ‡
ge wesen
beenwerd end §
ge worden or
word en become*Present.—Indicative and Subjunctive.*

Ich lob (e) || | hab (e) ¶ | bin sey** | werd (e) ††

* praising.—† having.—‡ being.—§ becoming.

|| *Pres* I praise or may praise, thou praisest or mayest praise, he, we, you, they praise or may praise.*Imperf.* I praised or might praise, thou praisedst or mightst praise, he, we, you, they praised or might praise.*Imp.* Praise (thou), let him praise, let us praise, praise (you), let them praise.¶ *Pres.* I have or may have, thou hast or mayst have, he, we, you, they have or may have.*Imperf.* I had or might h., thou hadst or mightst h., he, we, you, they had or might have.*Imp.* Have (thou), let him h., let us h., have (you), let them have.** *Pres.* I am or may be, thou art or mayst be, he is or m. be, we, you, they are or may be.*Imperf.* I was or might be, thou wast or mightst be, he was or m. be, we, you, they were or might be.*Imp.* Be (thou), let him be, let us be, be (you), let them be.†† *Pres.* I become or may b., thou becomest or mayst b., he becomes or m. b., we, you, they become or may become.*Imperf.* I became or might b., thou becamest or mightst b., he, we, you, they became or might become.*Imp.* Become (thou), let him become, let us b., become (you), let them become.

Du	lob (e)ft	hast hab eft	bist fey (e)ft	wirft werb eft
Er	lob (e)t lob e	hat hab e	ift fey	wird werb e
Wir	lob en	hab en	sind fey (e)n	werd en
Ihr	lob (e)t	hab (e)t	seyd fey (e)d	werd et
Sie	lob en	hab en	sind fey (e)n	werd en

Imperfect. — Indicative and Subjunctive.

Ich	lob (e)te	hat te hât te	war (e) wâr e	*wurd e würd e
Du	lob (e)teft	hat teft hât teft	war (e)ft wâr (e)ft	wurd (e)ft würd (e)ft
Er	lob (e)te	hat te hât te	war wâr e	wurd e würd e
Wir	lob (e)ten	hat ten hât ten	war en wâr en	wurd en würd en
Ihr	lob (e)tet	hat tet hât tet	war (e)t wâr (et)	wurd et würd et
Sie	lob (e)ten	hat ten hât ten	war en wâr en	wurd en würd en

Imperative.

Lob (e) (bu)	hab (e) (bu)	sey (bu)	werb (e) (bu)
lob (e) er	hab e (er)	sey er	werb (e) er
lob en wir	hab en wir	sey n wir	werb en wir
lob (e)t (ihr)	hab et (ihr)	sey d (ihr)	werb et (ihr)
lob en fie	hab en fie	sey n fie	werb en fie

Observations.

I. The *second pers. sing.* of the *Imperative* without the softening *e*, (which is often omitted in the familiar style), is the naked root of the verb. This *e* may be left out, wherever it is placed between (), if the meeting of the consonants produces no harshness or indistinctness; even in the *Infinitive* when the roots end in *el*, *eh*, *e*, or *et*, the *e* is mostly omitted: to kneel *kni-en* (pron. *kni-en*), to smile *lâcheln*, to see *sehn* or *sehen*. Sometimes the *e* before the *l* or *r* is dropped, when these consonants are followed by *e*, as *ich lâchle*, for *lâchele* smile.

II. The *Part. Pres.* is formed by the addition of *d* to the *Inf.*;

III. The *Part. Past*, by the prefixing of *ge*, and the changing of the *n* into *t*. *Exc.* in verbs ending in *ieren* or *iren*, e. gr. *regieren*, *regiert* (See also *Rs.* 175, 176, 180 and 182).

IV. The *Pres. Ind.* and *Subj.* are alike; *exc.* in the 3rd pers. sing. which in the latter ends in *e*, like the 1st pers. and in the former in *t*. In both, for the rest, the 2d pers. sing. is in *ft*, the 1st and 3rd plur. like the *Inf.*, and the 2d pers. plur. in *t*.

* Also: *ich ward*, *du wardft*, *er ward*, which form is preferred in the *passive voice*, (see *R.* 166).

V. The *Imperf.* has the terminations of the Pres. Subj. with a *t*, before them ; which here as in the Past. Part. corresponds with the Engl. *d*, in marking the past.

VI. The *Imperat.* is the same as the Pres. Subj., exc. in the 2d pers. sing. which is like the 1st of the Pres. It is chiefly distinguished by the pronouns being placed after it ; in the 2d pers., nevertheless, they may be altogether omitted.

VII. The *Auxiliary Verbs* are more or less irregular, both in their roots and terminations, as will be seen on comparing them with their Infinitives and the regular form *loben*.

b) Compound Tenses.

INFINITIVE PAST.

Gelobt, or gehabt haben, to have praised, or had.

Gewesen, or geworden seyn, to have been, or become.

NB. Literally praised to have, had to have ; been to be, been to become, the Partic. being always placed *before* the Infin., and *seyn* and *werden* being of those neut. verbs which form their comp. tenses with *seyn* (see R. 163 &c.).

Perfect, or Compound of the Present.

Ich habe gelobt, or gehabt,

I have (or may have) praised,
or had,

Du { hast
habeſt } gelobt, or gehabt,

thou { hast
mayest have } praised,
or had,

Er { hat
habe } gelobt, or gehabt,

he { has
may have } praised,
or had,

Wir haben gelobt, or gehabt,

We have (or may have) praised,
or had,

Ihr habet gelobt, or gehabt,

You have (or may have)
praised, or had,

Sie haben gelobt, or gehabt,

They have (or may have)
praised, or had,

Ich { bin } gewesen, or { sey } geworden,	I { have } been, or be- { may have } come,
Du { bist } gewesen, or { seyst } geworden,	thou { hast } been, or { mayst have } become &c

Pluperfect, or Compound of the Imperfect.

Ich { hatte } gelobt, or { hätte } gehabt,	I { had } praised, or { might have } had &c.
Ich { war } gewesen, or { wäre } geworden,	I { had } been, or be- { might have } come &c.

First Future.

Ich werde loben,	I shall praise,
Du { wirst } haben,	thou wilt have,
Er { wird } seyn, or { werde } werden,	he will be, or
Wir werden werden,	we shall become.
Ihr werdet werden,	you will
Sie werden werden,	they will

Second Future.

Ich werde { gelobt, or gehabt haben,	I shall { have praised, or had.
Ich werde { gewesen, or geworden seyn,	I shall { have been, or become, &c.

Conditional Present.

Ich würde { loben, haben, seyn, or werden,	I should { praise, have be, or become &c.
---	--

Conditional Past.

Ich würde { gelobt, or gehabt haben,	I should { have praised, or had,
Ich würde { gewesen, or geworden seyn,	I should { have been, or become, &c.

Observations.

I. *Inf. Past.* the *Perf.* and *Pluperf.* of all transit. and many intrans. verbs are made by means of *haben*, and of several neuter by *seyn*; (See Rs. 163 &c.)

II. The *Future tenses* in the *Ind.* as well as the *Subj.* are made by the *Pres.* of *werden*; implying that the action, power &c. expressed in the *Inf.*, is to grow into being.

III. The *Conditional tenses* are formed, in the same sense, by means of the *Imperf. Subj.* of *werden*.

155. There is a Future which is expressed in English by the verb. *to be*, placed before an *Inf.*; this is rendered in Germ., according to the sense being more or less imperative, by *werde*, or *sollen*:

He *is* to come to-day, er wird, or soll heute kommen.

He *was* to have been here at seven o' clock, Er hatte um sieben Uhr hier seyn sollen (see Syntax on the Moods).

156. The auxiliary verb relating to several participles, is mentioned only once: Er hat das Buch geschrieben, gedruckt und herausgegeben, he has written, printed and published the book.

157. If the auxiliary is to be moved to the end of a member of a sentence, especially if the next member begins with the same word, it is often omitted: Sobald er mich gesehen (hat), hat er mich angeteet, as soon as he has seen me, he has addressed me.

158. *To be about* is expressed by *im Begriffe seyn*: I am, or was, about to write, Ich bin, or war im Begriffe zu schreiben; I shall be about, ich werde im Begriffe seyn; or by *wollen* or *sollen*: I was about to go ich wollte eben gehen; He was about to be banished er sollte verbannt werden.

159. The verb *to be* is never used in Germ. before a **PART. PRES.**; and such expressions as *I am writing*, *I was writing*, must be rendered respectively by the *Pres.* and *Imperf.* of the verb to which the participle belongs: ich schreibe, ich schrieb; or ich schreibe (schrieb) eben; or ich bin (war)

eben am Schreiben ; I shall be writing, Ich werde (alsdann) schreiben.—If relating to things, the sentence must be made passive ; as the letter is writing, der Brief wird geschrieben, (becomes written).

160. *Do* or *did* used in interrogative or negative sentences is entirely dropped in German, as : I don't praise Ich lobe nicht ; Did he praise ? Lobte er ?

161. In answer to a question, or whenever the verb *to do* is introduced to convey emphasis, some adverb must be substituted for it, such as ja, denn, doch :

Why does he not write ? Warum schreibt er nicht ? Don't you see ? he does write, sehen Sie (see R. 106 d.) denn nicht ? er schreibt ja. Do write to me soon, schreiben Sie mir doch bald.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

162. Many of the primitive verbs are irregular, both in their simple and compound forms ; but their irregularities are chiefly confined to the *Imperfect* and *Past Participle* ; the Partic. Present, and the Pres. Subjunctive being never irregular, and the *Pres. Indic.* only occasionally in the sing. and the *Imperat.* still more rarely, in the second pers. sing. In these verbs, the Past. Partic. are mostly formed in n instead of t, changing, together with the Imperf. their radical vowels, and sometimes also doubling their consonants.

These verbs may be presented in classes (and are so in the Exercises) ; but the following alphabetical list will answer every purpose of the student.—This list presents :

I. THE INFINITIVE PRESENT.

II. THE PRES. INDIC., but only those persons which actually are irregular.

III. THE IMPERF. INDIC. 1st pers. sing. ; the rest being made as follows : in the sing. the 2d adds *st* or *est*, the 3rd remains like the first ; and in the plur. the 1st and 3rd add *en*, and the 2d *t* or *et*.

The Imperf. Subj. varies from it, by adding *e* to the 1st and 2d pers. sing. if they do not already end so, and by changing the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, if they exist† — otherwise both tenses are alike.

IV. THE IMPERATIVE, if irregular, which can only be in the 2d pers. sing.

V. THE PARTICIPLE PAST.

EXAMPLE :

INFINITIVE.		PARTICIPLES.	
<i>Present.</i>		<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>
brechen, to break,		brechend,	gebrochen.
INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE.		IMPERATIVE.	
<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>		
breche,	brach, bräche,		brich or breche.
brichst, brechest.	brachst, brächest,		breche er.
bricht, breche,	brach, bräche,		brechen wir.
brechen,	brachen, brächen,		brechet (ihr).
brechet,	brachet, brächet,		brechen sie.
brechen,	brachen, brächen,		

Comp. tenses according to R. 154, b.

NB.—Only those comp. verbs are introduced, which either do not occur in their simple form, or are regular in that form.

Explanation of Signs.

* Placed near the infinitive, denotes that the verb may also be conjugated regularly; if near a particular tense, it indicates the same for that tense only.

§ Shows that the form near which it is placed, is used only in the poetical style.

† Denotes that the verb is irregular only when intransitive.

<i>Infinitive.</i>		<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>Imperat.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
Backen,†	to bake	bäckst, bäck,	buck		gebacken
Befehlen,	—command	befiehst, be- siehst,	befahl ¹	befiehl	befohlen
Befleissen (sich),	} —apply one- self }		befliß		beflissen
Beginnen,			begann ²		begonnen
Beißen,	—bite		biß		gebissen
Bergen,	—conceal	birgst, birgt.	barg	birg*	geborgen
Bersten,†	—burst		barst	birst*	geborsten
Bewegen,*	—induce		bewog		bewogen

† A few take different vowels, being made from more ancient forms of the Imperf. Indic.

¹ Subj. beföhle.

² Subj. begänne or begönne.

³ Bewegen, to move, in the physical sense, is regular.

<i>Infinitive.</i>		<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>Imperat.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
Biegen,	to bend		bog		gebogen
Bieten,	—offer	beutst, beut,§	bot	beut§	geboten
Binden,	—bind		band		gebunden
Bitten,	—beg		bat		gebeten
Blasen,	—blow	bläsest, bläs(e)t	blies		geblasen
Bleiben,	—remain		blieb		geblieben
Bleichen, ¹	—grow pale		blich		gebleichen
Braten,†	—roast	brätst, brät*,	briet		gebraten
Brechen,	—break	brichst, bricht,	brach	brich	gebrochen
Brennen,†	—burn		brannte ²		gebrannt
Bringen,	—bring		brachte		gebracht
Denken,	—think		dachte		gedacht
Dingen,†	—contract		dung*		gebungen
Dreschen,	—thrash	drischeſt,	drasch ³	drisch	gedroschen
		drischt,			
Dringen,	—press		drang		gedrungen
Dürfen,	—be allowed	darf, darfst,	durfte		gedurft
		darf,			
Empfehlen,	—recommend	empfehlſt,	empfah ⁴	empfehl*	empfohlen
		empfiehl ⁴ ,			
Erküren,	—choose		erlor		erlören
Erlöschen, ⁵	—extinguish	erlöschest, er-	erlosch	erlisch	erloschen
		löscht,			
Erschrecken,	—be frighten-	{ erschrickſt, }	erschrack	erschrick	erschrocken
	ed	{ erschrickt, }			
Ermögen,	—consider		ermog		ermogen.
Essen,	—eat	iſseſt,* iſſ(e)t,	aß	iß*	geessen
Fahren. ⁶	—drive, &c.	fährſt, fährt,	fuhr		gefahren
Fallen,	—fall	fällſt, fällt,	fiel		gefallen
Fangen,	—catch	fängſt, fängt,	ſi(e)ng		gefangen
Fechten,	—fight	ſichſt, ſicht,*	ſocht	ſicht*	gefochten
Finden,	—find		ſand		gefunden
Flechten,*	—plait	ſlichſt, ſlicht,	ſlocht	ſlicht	geflochten
Fliegen,	—fly	ſleugſt, ſleugt§	ſlog	ſleug§	geflogen
Fliehen,	—flee	ſleuchſt,	ſloh	ſleuch§	geflohen
		ſleucht§			
Fließen,	—flow	ſleußeſt,	ſloß		geflossen
		ſleußeſt,§			
Fressen,	—devour	frißeſt, frißt*	fraß	friß*	gefressen
Frieren,	—freeze		fror		gestoren
Gähren,	—ferment		gor*		gegoren
Gebären,	—bring forth	gebierſt, ge-	gebar		geboren
		biert,			

¹ This verb is used regularly in the sense of *to bleach*; but *erbleichen*, *to grow pale*, is always irregular.

² Subj. regular.

³ Or *broſch*.

⁴ Imp. Subj. *empfohle*.

⁵ *Elöschen* and *auslöschen* are regular.

⁶ All verbs compounded with *fahren* are irreg. except *willfahren*.

<i>Infinitive.</i>		<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>Imperat.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
Geben,	to give	giebst, giebt,	gab	gieb*	gegeben
Gebeihen,	—prosper		gebieh		gebiehen
Gehen,	—go, walk		gi(e)ng		gegangen
Gelingen, ¹	—succeed		gelang		gelungen
Gelten,	—be worth	giltst, gilt,*	galt ²	gilt*	goltten
Genesen,	{ —recover from illness		genas		genesen
Genießen.	—enjoy		genosß		genossen
Geschehen,	—happen	es geschieht (impers.)	geschah		geschehen
Gewinnen,	—gain		gewann		gewonnen
Gießen,	—pour		goß		gegossen
Gleichen,	—resemble		glich		geglichen
Gleiten,	—glide		glitt		geglitten
Glimmen,*	—glimmer		glomm		geglommen
Graben,	—dig	gräbst, gräbt,	grub		gegraben
Greifen,	—seize		griff		gegriffen
Halten,	—hold	hältst, hält,	hielt		gehalten
Hängen,	—be suspend- ed		hieng		gehängen
Hauen,	—hew		hieb*		gehauen
Heben,	—heave		hob ³		gehoben
Heißen,	{ —bid, or be called		hieß		geheißen
Helfen,	—help	hilfst, hilft,	half ⁴	hilf*	geholfen
Heßen,	—hide		tiff		getiffen
Kennen,	—know ⁵		kannte ⁶		getannt
Klimmen,	—climb		klomm		getkommen
Klingen,	—sound		klang		geklungen
Kneifen, also Kneipen, }	—pinch		kniff		getniffen
Kommen,	—come	kömmst, kömmt,	kam		gekommen
Können,	—be able	kann, kannst, kann,	konnte		gekonnt
Kriechen,	—creep	kreuchst, kreucht ⁷	troch	kreuch ⁸	getrochen
Lären,			lor		getoren
Laden,	—load	lädst, lädt*	lud		geladen
Lassen,	—let ⁷	lässest, läßt*	ließ		gelassen
Laufen,	—run	läufst, läuft	lief		gelaufen
Leiden,	—suffer		litt		gelitten
Leihen,	—lend		lieh		geliehen

¹ Impersonal.² Subj. höbe or hübe.³ Subj. gölte.⁴ Subj. hülfe or hülf.⁵ Having a knowledge of the outward form of things, like the French *connaître* and the Lat. *cognosco*.⁶ Subj. regul.⁷ To allow, to cause: *machen lassen*, to have made.

<i>Infinitive.</i>		<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>Imperat.</i>	<i>Participle</i>
Lesen,	to read	liesest, lies(e)t*	las	lies*	gelesen
Liegen,	—lie down		lag		gelegen
Lügen,	—tell a lie	leugst, leugst	log	leug	gelogen
Mahlen, ¹	—grind				gemahlen
Meiden,	—avoid		mied		gemieden
Meilen, [†]	—milk		molzt*		gemolten
Messen,	—measure	missest, mißt	maß	miß	gemessen
Mißlingen,	—fail		mißlang		mißlungen
Mögen,	—be able	mag, magst,	mochte		gemocht
	(may)	mag			
Müssen,	{ be obliged	muß, mußt,	mußte		gemußt
	(must)	muß			
Nehmen,	—take	nimmst, nimmst	nahm	nimm*	genommen
Nennen,	—name		nannte ²		genannt
Pfeifen,	—whistle		pfiß		gepiffen
Pflegen, ³	—cherish		pflog		gepflogen
Preisen,	—praise		pries*		gepriesen
Quellen,	{ —spring	quillst, quillt*	quoll	quill*	gequollen
	forth, swell				
Rathen,	—advise	räthst, räth	rieth		gerathen
Reiben,	—rub		rieb		gerieben
Reißen,	—tear		riß		gerissen
Reiten,	—ride		ritt		geritten
Rennen,*	—run		rannte ⁴		gerannt
Riechen,	—smell		roch		gerochen
Ringen,	—wrestle		rang		gerungen
Rinnen,	—flow		rann		geronnen
Rufen,	—call		rief		gerufen
Salzen,*	—salt				gesalzen
Saufen,	{ swallow li-	saufft, sauft	soff		gesoffen
	quids, to				
	tipple	saugst, saugt	sog		gesogen
Saugen,	—suck		schuf		geschaffen
Schaffen,	—create		scholl		geschollen
Schallen,	—sound		schied		geschieden
Scheiden,	—part		schien		geschienen
Scheinen,	—appear	schiltst, schilt	schalt	schilt	gescholten
Schelten,	—chide		schor		geschoren
Scheren,	—shear		schob		geschoben
Schieben,	—push		schob		geschoben
Schießen,	—shoot		schuß		geschossen
Schinden,	—flay		schund*		geschunden
Schlafen,	—sleep	schläfst, schläft	schief		geschlafen
Schlagen,	—beat	schlägst, schlägt	schlug		geschlagen
Schleichen,	—sneak		schlich		geschlichen
Schleifen,	—grind		schliff		geschliffen

¹ Mahlen or malen to paint, is regular. ² Subj. reg. ³ To cherish friendship; in every other signification it is regular. ⁴ Sub. reg.

<i>Infinitive.</i>		<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>Imperat.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
Schleichen, to split			schliß		geschliffen
Schließen, —lock			schloß		geschlossen
Schlingen, —to swallow			schlang		geschlungen
Schmeißen, —throw		schmitzest, schmitzt	schmiß	schmitz	geschmissen
Schmelzen,* —melt			schmolz		geschmolzen
Schnauben, —snort			schnob		geschnoben
Schneiden, —cut			schnitt		geschnitten
Schrauben,† —screw			schrob		geschroben
Schreiben, —write			schrieb		geschrieben
Schreien, —cry			schrie		geschrien
Schreiten, —stride			schritt		geschritten
Schwären, —fester			schwor		geschworen
Schweigen,† —be silent		schwülft, schwillt	schwieß	schwül	geschwiegen
Schwellen, —swell			schwoll		geschwollen
Schwimmen, —swim			schwamm		geschwommen
Schwinden, —vanish			schwand		geschwunden
Schwingen, —swing			schwang		geschwungen
Schwören, —swear			schwor ¹		geschworen
Sehen, —see	siehst, sieht		sah	sieh	gesehen
Senden,* —send			sandte ²		gesandt
Sieden,† —boil			sott		gesotten
Singen, —sing			sang		gesungen
Sinken, —sink			sank		gesunken
Sinnen, —meditate			sann		gesonnen
Sitzen, —sit			sas		gesehen
Sollen, { —be obliged (shall) ³	soll, sollst, soll				
Spalten,* —split			spie		gespalten
Speien, —spit			spann		gespien
Spinnen, —spin			spinn		gesponnen
Spleißen, —split			spieß		gesplissen
Sprechen, —speak	sprichst, spricht		sprach	sprich*	gesprachen
Sprossen, —sprout			sproß		gesprossen
Springen, —spring			sprang		gesprungen
Stechen, —sting			stach	stich*	gestochen
Stechen,† —stick	stichst, sticht		stach	stich	gestochen*
Stehen, —stand			stand		gestanden
Stehlen, —steal	stiehst, stiehlt		stahl	stieh!	gestohlen
Steigen, —stride			stieg		gestiegen
Sterben, —die	stirbst, stirbt		starb ⁴	stirb	gestorben
Stieben, —be scattered			stob		gestoben
Stinken, —stink			stank		gestunken
Stoßen, —push	stößest, stößt		stieß		gestoßen
Streichen, —stroke			strich		gestrichen

¹ Subj. schwüre.² Ought, to be said.³ Subj. regular.⁴ Subj. stürbe.

<i>Infinitive.</i>		<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>Imperat.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
Streiten,	to strive		stritt		gestritten
Thun,	—do		that		gethan
Tragen,	—carry	trägst, trägt	trug		getragen
Treffen,	—hit, meet	triffst, trifft	traf	triff	getroffen
Treiben,	—drive		trieb		getrieben
Treten,	—tread	trittst, tritt	trat	tritt	getreten
Tiefen,	—drop	treußt, treußt	troff	treuß	getrofen
Trogen, or	—deceive	treugt,	trog	treug	getrogen
Trügen,		treugt			
Trinken,	—drink		trank		getrunken
Verderben,†	—spoil	verdirbst, verdirbt	verdarb	verdirb*	verdorben
Verdriesen,	—be vexed ¹	es verdreußt	verdroß		verdroffen
Vergeffen,	—forget		vergaß	vergiß	vergeffen
Verlieren,	—lose		verlor		verloren
Verwirren,	—confuse		verworr		verworren
Wachsen,	—grow	wächst, wächst*	wuchs		gewachsen
Wiegen,	—weigh		wog		gemogen
Waschen,	—wash		wusch		gewaschen
Weichen,†	—yield		wich		gewichen
Weisen,	—show		wies		gewiesen
Wenden,	—turn		wandte		gewandt
Werben,	—sue	wirbst, wirbt	warb	wirb	geworben
Werfen,	—throw	wirfst, wirft	warf	wirf	geworfen
Winden,	—wind		wand		gewunden
Wissen,	—know	weiß, weißt, weiß	wußte		gemußt
Wollen,	—be willing	will, willst, } or willst, will }			
Zethen,	—accuse		zieh		geziesen
Ziehen,²	—draw	zeuchst, zeuchts	zog	zeuch	gezogen
Zwingen,	—compel		zwang		gezwungen

¹ Impersonal, with the acc.

² To move forward, march.

OBSERVE.—Care should be taken not to confound regular transit. verbs with irreg. intransit. especially as they have often the same Infin. or differ very slightly, e. gr.

Beugen to make bend, biegen to be bending; drängen to oppress, bringen to strive forward; fallen to fell, fallen to fall; hängen to suspend, hangen to be suspended; legen to lay, liegen to lie; säugen to suckle, saugen to suck; schmelzen to smelt, to cause to melt, and to be melting; setzen to set, sitzen to sit; sprengen to force open, springen to be bursting; senken to cause to sink, sinken to be sinking; tränken to give drink, trinken to drink; verschwenden to squander, verschwinden to disappear; wägen to weigh (a thing), wiegen to have weight.

COMPOUND TENSES OF INTRANSITIVE OR NEUTER VERBS.

163. Intransitive verbs expressing an activity, a power or a continuous state, such as to eat, to sound, to feel, to endure, to live, form their Comp. tenses with *haben*.

164. Those which express a change from one state into another, or a motion by which the subject is brought from one locality to another, such as to grow, to recover, to advance, to run, to gallop, form theirs with *seyn*. Thus *Ich bin genesen* I am recovered, implies I am changed from sick to healthy; *Ich bin gelaufen* I have run, that by a rapid motion I have been transported from one place to another.

EXAMPLES OF

Action and Permanency and *Change.*

Ich habe gewacht I have watched. *Ich bin erwacht* or *aufgewacht* I have awoke.

Ich habe geschlafen I have slept. *Ich bin eingeschlafen*, or *entschlafen* I have fallen asleep.

Das Feuer hat gebrannt the fire has been burning. *Das Holz ist verbrannt* the wood is burnt.

Das Pferd hat ausgeschlagen the horse has kicked (struck out). *Der Baum ist ausgeschlagen*, the tree has budded.

165. This principle is still more strikingly elucidated in some verbs* expressing a motion, which may be confined to a circumscribed locality, or bring the subject forward in a certain *direction*, and in the former case take *haben*, and in the latter *seyn* :

Circumscribed Motion.

Der Vogel hat im Käfig geflattert, the bird has fluttered in the cage.

Directed Motion.

Er ist zum Fenster hinausgeflattert, he has fluttered out of the window.

* Such are *eilen* to hasten, *flattern* to flutter, *hinken* to limp, *klettern* to climb, *kriechen* to creep, *laufen* to run, *reisen* to travel, *reiten* to ride, *rinnen* to run (flow), *segeln* to sail, *rudern* to row, *schiffen* to navigate, *schwimmen* to swim, *springen* to jump, *wandern* to wander &c.

Wir hatten oft geritten, we had often been riding.	Sie waren ausgeritten, they had taken a ride.
Haben Sie je gerudert? have you ever rowed?	Wie weit sind sie gerudert? how far have they rowed?
Der Donner hat lange gerollt the thunder has long been rolling.	Der Schnee ist den Berg hinab gerollt, the snow has rolled down the hill.
Der Knabe hat gesprungen, the boy has been jumping.	Er ist ihm nachgesprungen, he has jumped after him.
Sie hat getrabt, she has trotted	Sie ist ²⁴ fort getrabt, she has trotted away.

PASSIVE VOICE.

166, Often the verb to be joined to participles of transitive verbs, must be rendered by werden instead of seyn, as that auxiliary serves to form what is termed the passive voice :

INFINITIVE.

Gelobt werden to be praised.	Gelobt worden seyn to have been praised.
------------------------------	--

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

Ich werd e gelobt I am	Ich werd e gelobt I be	} praised.
Du wirst gelobt thou art	Du werdest gelobt thou be	
Er wird gelobt he is	Er werde gelobt he be	
Wir werd en gelobt we are	Wir werd en gelobt we be	
Ihr werdet gelobt you are	Ihr werdet gelobt you be	
Sie werd en gelobt they are	Sie werd en gelobt they be	

²⁴ When fort signifies a continuation, nach, in imitation of, and aus termination, the verbs to which they are joined take haben, but when they respectively signify away, after, out, they take seyn :

Wir haben fortgetrabt we have continued trotting.

Wem hat Sie nachgetanzt? whose dancing has she imitated?

Wir haben ausgeritten we have finished riding.

Imperfect.

Ich wurde or ward gelobt I was Ich würde gelobt I were or
praised &c. might be praised &c.

Perfect.

Ich bin gelobt worden I have Ich sey gelobt worden I may
been praised &c. have been praised &c.

Pluperfect.

Ich war gelobt worden I had Ich wäre gelobt worden I might
been praised &c. have been praised &c.

First Future.

Ich werde gelobt werden I shall Ich werde gelobt werden I shall
be praised. be praised.
Du wirst gelobt werden thou Du werdest gelobt werden thou
wilt be praised &c. wilt be praised &c.

Second Future.

Ich werde gelobt worden seyn, I Ich werde gelobt worden seyn I
shall have been praised &c. shall have been praised &c.

CONDITIONAL.

Present.

Ich würde gelobt werden I should
be praised &c.

Past.

Ich würde gelobt worden seyn I
should have been praised &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Werden wir gelobt let us be
praised.

Werde (du) gelobt be (thou) Werde (ihr) gelobt be (you)
praised. praised.

Werde er gelobt let him be Werde sie gelobt let them be
praised. praised.²⁵

²⁵ In applying the passive voice to *things*, the English language generally employs the *Part. Pres.* as : my coat is *brushing*, which would

167. None but transitive verbs can be employed in the passive, therefore in phrases like the following, *man* is used for the Nom., and the Engl. Nom. turned into a Dat.:

He has been followed *man* *ist ihm* gefolgt.

She would not be trusted *man würde ihr* nicht trauen.

REFLECTIVE AND RECIPROCAL VERBS.

168. Every transitive verb is *reflected* when the action it expresses returns on the subject by which it is performed, as *he flatters himself*; and *reciprocal*, when the action is mutual between two or more individuals, as *they love themselves, or each other*. But there are some neuter verbs in Germ. which always take a second pronoun, and are distinguished in the dictionary, by *sich*; as: *sich anmaßen* to assume, *sich freuen* to rejoice, *sich fürchten* to be afraid, *sich schämen* to be ashamed, &c.

Reflective verbs generally require the accusative; some, of the latter kind, however, especially among the Impersonal, take the dative.

EXAMPLES:

Dative.

Ich getraue *mir* I dare

Du getrauest *dir* thou darest

Accusative.

Ich freue *mich* I rejoice

Du freuest *dich* thou rejoicest

be readily translated by *mein Kopf wird gebürstet*; while the phrase, is *brushed* would at once appear as neuter, and translated, *ist gebürstet*.

But with regard to *persons*, the passive as well as the neuter are expressed by *to be* with the *Part. Past*. It is then necessary to consider whether an agent is understood to perform the *action* expressed in the Participle, or whether the Part. is merely employed as a predicate indicating the *state* of the subject mentioned in the Nom. case. For instance the hero is admired, may be turned into, some one admires the hero, and be consequently the passive voice; or it may mean, he is an admired hero, and then be a neuter verb. The former should be translated by: *der Held wird bewundert*, and the latter by, *der Held ist bewundert*.

Er getrauet sich he dares	Er freuet sich he rejoices
Wir getrauen uns we dare	Wir freuen uns we rejoice
Ihr getrauet euch you dare	Ihr freuet euch you rejoice
Sie getrauen sich they dare.	Sie freuen sich they rejoice.

169. The *compound tenses* of *all* verbs taking the reflective pronouns are *always* formed with *haben*: Ich habe mich getrauet, I have dared.

170. Sometimes the reflective form is used instead of the passive voice, as, die Thüre öffnete sich, for wurde geöffnet, the door was opened, das versteht sich, for wird verstanden, that is understood.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

171. These are verbs which are used only in the third person sing. ; and the agency being unknown, or supposed to be unknown, the nominative is expressed by *es* it ; as :

Es regnet it rains	Es regnete it rained, or it might
Es regne it may rain	rain
Es hat geregnet it has rained	Es hatte geregnet it had rained
Es habe geregnet it may have	Es hätte geregnet it might have
rained	rained
Es wird, or es werde regnen it	Es wird, or es werde geregnet haben
will rain	it will have rained
Es würde regnen, it would rain	Es würde geregnet haben, it would
	have rained

Regne es let it rain.

172. Many of these verbs are reflective, as *es* hungert mich I am hungry, *es* ahnet mir I forbode. With them the second pron. may be placed first, and *es* omitted, as mich hungert, mir ahnet ; indeed *es* is generally omitted, when another word precedes the verb.

173. An Impers. Passive form is often used to denote some indefinite persons :

Es wird getanzt und gespielt	people are dancing and playing.
Es wurde viel gesprochen	there was much talked (talking).

ON COMPOUND VERBS.

174. Compound verbs are of three kinds :

I. The inseparable.

II. The separable.

III. Those which are sometimes of the one class, and sometimes of the other.

I. INSEPARABLE COMPOUND VERBS.

175. These are formed by the following particles *be*, *emp*, *ent*, *er*, *ge*, *ver*, *zer*, and the adverbs *wider* and *offen*. They differ in no respect from simple verbs, except that their Part. Past does not take the augment *ge*, as *be-dienen* to serve, *ich habe be-dient* I have served, *be-schreiben* to describe, *ich habe be-schrieben* I have described.

176. The particular characteristic of these compounds is that they have the accent on the verb and not on the prefix, while the separable compounds have the accent always on the prefix. The following compound particles however, although having the accent on one of their syllables are also *inseparable*, viz:

beäuf	as in beauftragen to commission	Part. beauftragt.
beür	— beurtheilen to judge	— beurtheilt
beein	— beinträchtigen encroach upon	— beeinträchtigt
beün	— beunruhigen to trouble	— beunruhigt
verab	— verabreden to concert	— verabredet
vernäch	— vernachlässigen to neglect	— vernachlässigt
verün	— verunehren to disgrace	— verunehrt
verür	— verurfachen to occasion	— verurfaçhet

177. Antworten to answer, and many other compounded with substs. adjs. or adverbs, such as *lustwandeln* to walk for pleasure, *hofmeistern* to censure, *frohlodden* to rejoice, *rathschlagen* to consult, *willfahren* to yield, *handhaben* to maintain, *lieblosen* to caress, *weißsagen* or *wahrsagen** to prophecy,

* Wahr sagen, in two words, signifies to speak the truth.

frühstücken to breakfast, *rechtfertigen* to justify, are inseparable but take *ge* in the *Participle* : *gelustwanbelt*, &c.

II. SEPARABLE COMPOUND VERBS.

178. The adverbs and prepositions *ab*, *an*, *auf*, *aus*, *bei*, *bar*, *ein* (for *in*), *fehl*, *fort*, *her*, *hin*, *hoch*, *los*, *mit*, *nach*, *nieder*, *ob*, *vor*, *weg*, *wohl*, *zu**, are often joined to infinitives and form compound verbs ; but are separable from them by the interposition of *zu†* and *ge*, or removable to the end of sentences like other adverbs which are never joined with verbs. For example *ab-schreiben* to copy (literally : off write) is written and printed as one word, *gut schreiben* to write well, as two ; yet the *position* of *ab* and *gut* is the same, and the difference only is the former being united with the verb in one word, whenever the verb comes in contact with it.

Ich habe heute einen Brief abzus schreiben.

I have to-day a letter to copy (off to write).

Ich wünsche diesen Brief gut zu schreiben.

I wish this letter well to write.

Haben Sie die Briefe noch nicht abgeschrieben ?

Have you the letters yet not (not yet) copied
(off written) ?

Haben Sie den Aufsatz wieder nicht gut geschrieben ?

Have you the essay again not well written ?

Einen Brief abschreibend.

A letter off writing (copying a letter.)

Einen Brief gut schreibend.

A letter well writing (writing a letter well).

Den abzus schreibenden‡ Brief.

The off to writing letter (the letter to be copied).

Den gut zu schreibenden Brief.

The well to writing letter (the letter to be w. written).

* Some also in a compound state ; as *herein*, *heraus*, *herauf*, *herab*, *herunter*, *herüber*, *hinein*, *hinaus*, *vorbei*, *zusammen*, &c.

† For the use of this *zu* see Syntax of the Infinitive.

‡ See Syntax of Inf. and Part.

Ich schreibe ab, Ich schreibe gut.

I write off, I write well.

Ich schreibe, or schrieb, alle seine Briefe vortreflich ab.

I write, or wrote, all his letters excellently off.

Sie schreibt, or schrieb, heute wieder einmal sehr gut.

She writes, or wrote, to-day again once very well.

Schreiben Sie alles ab, und schreiben Sie es gut.

Write (you) all off, and write (you) it well.

Ich weiß, daß er die Papiere richtig abschreibt.

I know, that he the papers correctly off writes (copies).

Ich höre, daß sie seit einiger Zeit

I hear, that she since some time (for some time past)

sehr gut schreibt.

very well writes*.

179. There are some verbs compounded with substs. or adverbs, which are *separable*. But to be so, it is necessary that the subst. should appear like an Acc. case to the verb, and the adverb as a modifying term, retaining, when separated from the compound verb, the same meaning which it has in it. Such are *Dankfagen* to return thanks, *wohlthun* to benefit, &c. Ich sage Dank, er thut wohl.

III. SEPARABLE AND INSEPARABLE.

180. Durch through, hinter behind, über over, um round, down, unter under, voll full, wieder again, are often used adverbially, (the subst. which should follow the prepos. being understood), and appear with the verbs to which they are joined as separable compounds, bearing, like adverbs in general, the chief accent. Often, however, they are joined to verbs as inseparable particles, unaccented, and entirely following the rules of that class of verbs (See Rs. 175 and 176).

* See the rules on the construction of sentences.

*Examples.**Inseparable.*

Durchfahren to traverse
Der Blitz durchfährt die Luft,
the lightning traverses
the air

Hinterbringen to report
Ich habe eine Nachricht zu hin-
terbringen, I have an intel-
ligence to report

Uebersetzen to translate,
Er hat ein Buch übersetzt, he has
translated a book

Separable.

Wir kamen an einen Fluß und
fuhren durch, we came to a
river and passed through
(it).

Ich habe den Stuhl hinterzubrin-
gen, I have the chair behind
to bring (take)

Der Reiter kam an den Graben, und
setzte über, the horseman
came to the ditch, and leapt
over (it).

N.B. The inseparable verbs compounded with these words are, with hardly an exception, transitive.

181. Miß, the English *mis*, *amiss*, is sometimes accented and separable, and sometimes not.

a) The following are separable (though chiefly with regard to their taking the *zu* of the Inf. and *ge* of the Part. between the pref. and the verb).

Mißarten to degenerate, miß-
quarten, mißgeartet

Mißachten to disregard

Mißbieten to make a wrong
offer

Mißgehen to go amiss

b) The following transitives are *inseparable* miß being unaccented, but take *ge* before the particle.

Mißbilligen to disapprove, zu

mißbilligen, gemißbilligt

Mißbrauchen to abuse

Mißgreifen to lay hold of the
wrong thing

Mißrechnen to miscalculate

Mißtönen to sound amiss

Mißtreten to step amiss

Mißhandeln to act amiss

Mißhandeln to ill-use

Mißkennen to mistake (Fr. mé-
connaître)

Mißdeuten to misinterpret **Mißleiten** to mislead
Mißgönnen to grudge

182. **Aufstehen** to rise again, **anerkennen** to acknowledge, **eingestehen** to confess, and a few others formed with compound particles, the first of which happens to be of a separable kind, are *inseparable*, and do not take *ge* in the Part., but take *zu* between the pref. and the verb: **Auferstehen**, **aufzuerstehen**, **anerkannt**, **anzuerkennen**, &c.

ON THE ADVERBS.

183 The only forms which may be called adverbial (*lich*, the Engl. *ly*, being also an adjective termination), are the word **Weise** manner, a subst. fem., added to adjs. or adverbs, (as **glücklichweise** or **glücklicher Weise** luckily); and **s** added to adjs. or substs., the **s** being often a substitute for a preposition, e. gr.

For **an** or **in dem Morgen**, **des Morgens**, or **Morgens** in the morning

—— **dem Abend**, **des Abends**, or **Abends** in the evening

—— **dem Tag**, **des Tages**, or **Tages** in the day

in der Nacht, **des Nachts**, or **Nachts** in the night, or at night¹⁶

auf dieser or **jener Seite**, on this or that side, **diesseits**, **jenseits**†

in einem Flug, in a flight (hurry) **flugs** quickly &c.

zum ersten, **erstens** firstly

zum zweiten, **zweitens** secondly

zum besten, **bestens** in the best manner &c.

from bereit ready, **bereits** already

eilend hastening, **eilends** hastily

¹⁶ Also **eines Morgens**, **Abends**, **Tages**, **Nachts**, one (or once upon a) morning, evening &c.

† Although both **Nacht** and **Seite** are feminine, which otherwise never take **s** in the Gen.

184. Adverbs which express a quality, like adjs., take the degrees of comparison, thus: schön beautiful, schöner more beautiful, am, (zum, im) schönsten, or auf's schönste.

185. Auf (or zu, and sometimes in) mark a high degree :
 Er hat mich auf's gnädigste empfangen. He has received me most graciously.
 Sie wurde nicht zum besten aufgenommen. She was not received in the best manner.
 Es kränkt mich nicht im mindesten. It does not offend me in the least.

186. An (with the Dat. am) marks a comparison.
 Der Graf behandelte mich edelmüthig ; aber die Gräfinn behandelte mich am edelmüthigsten. The count treated me generously, but the countess behaved most generously (of the two).

187. The superlative is sometimes used without prepositions, such as äußerst extremely, höchst highly :
 Sie kamen uns freudigst entgegen. They came to meet us most joyfully.
 Thun Sie es gefälligst. Do it most kindly (often used instead of, if you please).

188. The following form their degrees irregularly :
 Bald, soon, eher, am ehesten.
 Gern willingly, lieber, am liebsten (the comp. and sup. of lieb dear).
 Viel much, mehr, am meisten, meisten (antiquated much.)
 Wenig little minder, am mindesten, also regular.
 Wohl, gut well, besser, am besten, (from the antiquated daß well).

ON THE CONJUNCTIONS.

. As conjunctions are not liable to variations, the explanation of their idiomatic uses has been reserved for the Exercises ; but thier influence on the position of the verb, &c. is shown in the Syntax.

ON THE PREPOSITIONS.

189. The Germ. prepositions govern the Gen. the Dat. or the Acc., some the Gen. or Dat., and some the Dat. or Acc.

190. PREPOSITIONS REQUIRING THE GENITIVE.

Anstatt or statt instead : anstatt meiner instead of me ; or separated : an meiner Statt.

Halben, or halber, on account, for the sake.—Halben is preferred when the subst. is preceded by an art. or pron. and halber when it is not : des Brodes halben, or Brodes halber for the sake of bread.

Außerhalb on the outside : Außerhalb der Stadt outside the town.

Innerhalb on the inside : Innerhalb des Gartens inside the garden.

Oberhalb on the upper side, above : Oberhalb des Schlosses above the palace.

Unterhalb on the lower side, below : Unterhalb des Waldes below the forest.

Diesseit on this side : Diesseit des Flusses on this side of the river.

Jenseit on the other (opposite) side : Jenseit des Grabes beyond the grave.

Kraft by virtue : Kraft seines Amtes by virtue of his office.

Laut according, conformably : Laut seines Berichtes according to his report.

Mittels, mittelst, vermittelt by means : Mittels einer Seidelleiter by means of a rope ladder.

Um . . . willen for the sake (always separated) : Um des Himmels willen for heaven's sake.

Ungeachtet (or ohngeachtet) notwithstanding, (may be placed before or after the case it governs, and is sometimes used with the Dat.) : Aller meiner Bestrebungen ungeachtet notwithstanding all my efforts.

Unweit not far from : Unweit des Lagers not far from the camp.
 Vermöge, by dint, by the power, or means : Vermöge seines Einflusses, by means of his influence.

Während during : Während meiner Reise during my journey.

Wegen concerning (may be placed before or after) : Wegen eines wichtigen Geschäftes, or eines wichtigen Geschäftes wegen concerning an important business.

Außer, längs, zufolge, see below.

191. PREPOS. REQUIRING THE DAT.

Aus out of : Aus der Kirche out of the church

Außer on the outside of : Außer mir besides me. In the phrase außer Landes out of the country, it governs the Gen.

Bei, near, close to, with (the Fr. *chez*). Er sitzt, wohnt, bei mir, he sits, lives with me.—Sein Haus steht bei der Brücke his house stands close by the bridge.

Binnen within (only relating to time) : Binnen acht Tagen, within a week.

Entgegen towards, contrary to, (is always joined to verbs) : Er kam mir entgegen he came to meet me.

Gegenüber opposite (after the case) : Uns gegenüber opposite to us.

Längs (or entlang) along, (also used with the Gen., and entlang even with the Acc.) : Ich ging längs der Wiese spazieren I took a walk along the meadow.

Gemäß conformable, (after the case) : Dem Auftrage gemäß conformable to the order.

Mit with : Gehen Sie mit dem Fremden go with the stranger.

Nach after, to, towards, following (in a direction), according : Er kam nach ihnen he came after them. Nach Frankreich to France.

In the sense of according, it goes after its case, unless the latter should be followed by a subst. : Der Beschreibung nach according to the description. Nach der Beschreibung des Unbekannten according to the description of the stranger.

Nächst or **zunächst** close by, (the latter often placed after the case) : *Er saß ihr zunächst* he sat next to her.

Nebst together with, besides : *Nebst unsern Freunden* together with our friends.

Ob above, concerning, (almost obsolete) : *Ob dem Walde* above the forest.

Sammt together with : *Sammt seinen Schwestern* together with his sisters.

Seit since :²⁷ *Seit ihrer Ankunft* since her arrival.

Trotz in spite of : *Trotz meinem Widerwillen* in spite of my reluctance.

Von of, off, from, by : *Wir reden von ihm* we speak of him.—*Der Apfel ist von einem guten Baume* the apple is off a good tree.—*Er hat es von uns*, he has it from us.—*Diese Geschichte ist von ihm* this history is by him.

Zu to, at, by, on : *Kommen Sie zu mir* come to me.—*Sie wohnen zu Mailand* they live at Milan—*Reist er zu Wasser oder zu Lande, zu Fuße oder zu Pferde?* Does he travel by water or by land, on foot or on horse-back.

Zufolge in obedience, (placed after a subst. it governs the Dat., but placed before, it requires the Gen.) : *Ihrem Befehle* *zufolge*, or *zufolge Ihres Befehles*, in obedience to your command.

Zuwider contrary, opposed, (always after the case) : *Der Wind war ihnen zuwider*, the wind was opposed to them.

192. PREPOS. REQUIRING THE ACCUSATIVE.

Durch through : *Der Zug ging durch die Stadt* the procession went through the town.—*Er siegte durch ihn* he conquered through him.

In the sense of during, it is placed after its case : *Die Nacht durch* through the night.

²⁷ *Since* as an adv. is rendered by *seitdem* : *Seitdem er weg ist* since he has been gone.

Für for : Für alle gute Menschen for all good men.

Gegen towards, against : Gegen die Stadt towards the town.

Die Predigt war gegen den Minister gerichtet the sermon was directed against the minister.

Gen is an abbreviation of gegen and used only in a few particular phrases ; as gen Himmel towards heaven.

Ohne without : Ohne dich without thee.

Sonder without, (rather obsolete) : Sonder Zweifel without doubt.

Um around, about, concerning, for : Um den Park round the park.—Er ist um uns besorgt he is apprehensive about us.—Spielen sie um Geld ? do they play for money ?

Wider against, opposed to : Wer zeugte wider ihn ? who testified against him ?

193. PREPOS. REQUIRING THE DAT. OR ACC.

An at, near, close to *any* side Neben near, *along side* of.
of a thing. Ueber over, above.

Auf on, upon, on the upper side of a thing. Unter, below.
side of a thing. Vor before, in front of.

Hintert behind. Zwischen between.

In, in or into.

These prepositions express the relations of locality.—If we state that a person, animal or thing *is*, or *moves close* to, on, within, by the side of, above, below, before, behind or between other persons, animals or things, and when we may ask where, whereat, whereon, wherein such a person &c. exists or moves, the prepos. requires the *Dat.*

But if a verb denotes a *motion* or *direction*, either physical or mental, *towards* an object, *to get close to*, on, or within it &c. the prepos. demands the *Acc.* EXAMPLES:

With the Dat.

Wir sitzen an dem Tisch we are seated at the table.

With the Acc.

Gegen Sie sich an das Fenster sit down by the window.

Die Reihe ist an mir it is my turn.

Die Violine lag auf einem Stuhle the violin lay on a chair.

Wir ritten auf dem Berge spazieren we took a ride on the hill.

Alles liegt auf mir every thing lies (depends) on me.

Die Kinte steht hinter der Thüre the gun stands behind the door.

Der Bediente ging hinter seinem Herrn her the footman went along behind his master.

Er saß in tiefen Gedanken verloren he sat lost in deep thought.

Sie wohnten dicht neben mir they lived close by me.

Es schwebt eine große Gefahr über Ihnen a great danger hovers over you (your head).

Der Wagen hielt unter²⁸ dem Thorwege the carriage stopped beneath the gate way.

Ich befand mich auf einmal unter einem großen Gebränge, I found myself at once among a great crowd.

Er floh vor ihm, weil er sich vor ihm fürchtete he fled before

Saben Sie an mich gedacht? have you thought of me?

Sie legten sich auf das Gras they lay down on the grass.

Wir ritten auf den Berg spazieren we took a ride up the hill.

Verlassen Sie sich auf mich place your reliance (rely) on me.

Wir begaben uns hinter den Dom we went behind the cathedral.

Ich bin hinter sein Geheimniß gekommen, I have got behind his secret.

Sie verlor sich in tiefes Nachdenken she lost herself in (into) deep meditation.

Stellen Sie sich neben mich place yourself next to me.

Ich wundre mich über Sie I am surprised at you.

Wir fuhren unter einen Thorweg we drove under a gate way.

Ich weiß nicht, wie ich unter dasselbe gerathen war I do not know how I got among it.

Ich trat kühn vor ihn hin I stepped boldly (up) before him.

²⁸ In unter Wegeß on the road, and unterbeßen this prep. governs the Gen.

him, because he was afraid
before (of) him.

Vor wen wurde die Bittschrift
gelegt? before whom was
the petition laid?

Ihr Hut hängt zwischen zwei an-
deren your hat hangs be-
tween two others.

Ich hängte ihn zwischen Ihren und
meinen I hung it between
yours and mine.

*Combinations of Prepositions with other parts of
speech.*

194. WITH THE ARTICLES:

am	for an dem	vom	for von dem	auf's	for auf das
beim	— bei dem	zum	— zu dem	durch's	— durch das
hinterm	— hinter dem	zur	— zu der	für's	— für das
im	— in dem	an's	— an das	in's	— in das &c.

195. WITH THE ADVERBS da AND wo (see R. 98).

baran	thereat,	woran	whereat
darauf	thereon,	worauf	whereon
daraus	thereout	woraus	whereout
dabei	thereby	wobei	whereby
dafür	therefore.	wofür	wherefore
damit	therewith.	womit	wherewith
darein	} therein.	worein	} wherein
darin		worin	
darnach	thereafter	wonach	whereafter
darüber	thereon, thereover	worüber	whereon
darunter	thereunder	worunter	whereunder
davor	before it	wovor	before what
dazu	thereto	wozu	whereto.

196. WITH PRONOUNS.

meinetwegen	on my account,	beinetwegen	on thy account,
meinet halben	for my sake	beinet halben	for thy sake

seinetwegen	on his or its ac- count	ihretwegen	on her or their account
seinethalben	for his or its sake	ihrethalben	for her sake, or their sakes
unseretwegen	on our account,	euretwegen	on your account
unserethalben	for our sakes	eurethalben	for your sakes
diesetwegen	} on this account	jenetwegen	} on that account
dieserthalben		jenethalben	
deswegen	} therefore	weswegen	} wherefore
desshalben		weshalben	
um dessentwillen	on account of whom.	um wessentwillen	on whose ac- count.

INTERJECTIONS.

197. The principal words of this class are :

Äh, ach! ah, oh, alas!	husch! hush!
Äha, ey (ei) eh! aha, ey!	Juché, Juche! hurra!
Äu, au weh, uf! ah! (excla- mations of bodily pain).	O! O, oh!
Äei, pfui! fie, foh!	O weh, alas, oh dear!
Äha, ha, ha! ha, ha, ha!	Oho! Oho!
Ähe! hem! he, hem, hallo!	Öa, fa! Soho!
Äheisa, hurra! huzza, hurra!	St! St!
Äho, holla! ho, hallo!	Weh! woe!
Ähu! hoo! (cold, or fear)	Weh mir! (<i>Dat.</i>) woe's me!
Ähum! hem, pshaw!	Wohl! well!
	Wohl mir! (<i>Dat.</i>) happy I!

SYNTAX.

USE OF THE ARTICLES, &c.

198. The proper use of the articles in Engl. is to single out individuals from whole species. But in Germ. the def. art. is also employed with words taken in a general sense, especially in the oblique cases, viz : the Gen. and Dat.

EXAMPLES :

Der Mensch ist sterblich, man is mortal.

Die Jugend ist liebenswürdig, virtue is amiable.

Der Hunger thut weh, hunger is grievous.

Der Kaffee ist wohlfeiler als die Chocolate, coffee is cheaper than chocolate.

Das Lesen beim Zwielicht schadet den Augen, reading in twilight injures the eyes.

Die Meinungen der Menschen, the opinions of men.

Der Genuß des Lebens, the enjoyment of life.

Das Gute lieben und dem Bösen folgen ist dem Menschen eigen, to love good and to follow evil is peculiar to man.

197. It is used also in phrases like the following :

Im Parlamente, in Parliament.

In der Stadt, in town.

In der Kirche, at (or in the) church.

In d e r Schule at (or in the) school.

In d i e Kirche, to (or to the) church.

Auf d e r Börse, on change

D e r heilige Johannes, St. John.

D i e heilige Schrift, holy writ.

D a s verlorene Paradies, Paradise lost.

D e r Frühling, d e r Sommer, d e r Herbst und d e r Winter sind die vier Jahreszeiten, spring, summer, autumn, and winter are the four seasons of the year.

D i e Sanct Paul's Kirche, St. Paul's church.

D a s Befreite Jerusalem, Jerusalem Delivered.

D e r Sonntag ist der erste Tag in der Woche, und d e r Januar, der erste Monat im Jahre, Sunday is the first day in the week, and January the first month in the year.

D e r Morgen und d e r Abend, morning and evening.

D a s Parlament ist versammelt, parliament is assembled.

D a s Christenthum ist aus d e m Judenthum entsprungen, Christianity has sprung from Judaism.—Im Ernst in earnest.

D i e meisten Leute, most people.

199. It is used before towns, names of countries, *when preceded by an adj.* and the names of countries of the *fem. gender*, whether preceded by an *adj.* or not.

D a s große London ist die Hauptstadt d e s reichen Englands, great London is the capital of rich England.

D i e Türkei liegt theils in Europa, theils in Asien, Turkey lies partly in Europe, partly in Asia.

. Before names of persons it *may* be used. (See R. 55)

200. It is also placed before ordinal numbers used as predicates:

Er ist der Erste, und sie die Zweite, he is first, and she is second.

201. If the subst. however is preceded by an *adj.* or *prepos.*, and in the Nom. plur. generally, the art. may be also omitted in Germ.

EXAMPLES:

Starker Kaffee ist ungesund, strong coffee is unwholesome.

Brennende Hitze ist schwerer zu ertragen, als erstarrende Kälte,
burning heat is more difficult to bear than freezing cold.

Mit Freunden darf man es nicht zu genau nehmen, with friends
one must not be too particular.

Er spricht von nichts als Rauchen und Trinken, he speaks of
nothing but smoking and drinking.

Mit Geduld, with patience. In Sorge in apprehension.

Zu Pferde, on horseback. Zu Fuße on foot.

Ohne Hoffnung, without hope. Vor Freude with joy.

Pferde (also die Pferde) sind nützliche Thiere, horses are useful
animals.

202. There are various phrases of a general nature in
which the art. is also omitted, as in Engl., altho' in the sing.
and not preceded by an adj. or prepos :

Was wählt ihr, Krieg oder Frieden ? what do you choose, war
or peace ?

List und Gewalt beherrschen die Welt, craft and violence rule
the world.

Gewalt geht vor Recht, might supersedes right.

Freude und Traurigkeit sind das Erbtheil des Menschen, joy and
sorrow are the inheritance of man.

Himmel und Erde werden vergehen, heaven and earth will pass
away.

Plünderung war an der Tagesordnung, plundering was the or-
der of the day.

Lesen ist seine Sache nicht, reading is not his choice.

203. It is farther omitted in both languages .

a) Before substs. taken in a partitive sense :

Hier ist Brod und Butter, here is bread and butter.

b) When the gen. is placed before the subst. by which it
is governed :

Ich lese Goethe's Werke (inst. of die W. G.) I read Goethe's
works.

c) After it has been once expressed before several substs. of the same gender, number and case; unless the words are to be peculiarly distinguished from each other:

Der Vater, Bruder und Oheim, the father, brother and uncle.

(Der Wolf und der Stier, eine Fabel, the wolf and the bull, a fable.)

d) Before proper names,²⁹ except in the instances mentioned in R. 199.

e) Before titles of rank.

Georg, König von England, George, king of England.

Doctor Luther; General Washington.

f) Before titles of books, and other superscriptions.

Deutsche Sprachlehre, German Grammar.

Erster Theil, zweites Capitel, dritte Seite, zehnte Zeile, volume first, chapter the second, page third, line tenth.

Inhalt contents, Vorrede preface, etc.

g) Before Gott, as the supreme being.

204. In the following it is omitted in Germ. altho' used in Engl.

Ostindien und Westindien, *the* East and West Indies.

Ersterer und letzterer, *the* former and *the* latter.

Besagter, Erwähnter, Gedächter, Genannter, *the* aforesaid.

Folgender, *the* following. Ueberbringer, *the* bearer. Beklagter, *the* defendant. Alle Welt, all *the* world.

²⁹ As the names of towns, countries and provinces of the neut. gender (which is nearly the whole of their number) do not take an article, if not preceded by an adj., of preceding them, is generally rendered by von, as:

Der Czar von Rußland, und der Kaiser von Oesterreich, the Czar of Russia, and the emperor of Austria.

Die Einwohner von Frankreich, (or die Einwohner Frankreichs), the inhabitants of France.

But in the Fem. where the art. is used, of, in such phrases, is rendered by the Gen. as:

Die Gebirge der Schweiz, the mountains of Switzerland.

Die Beherrscher der Moldau, the rulers of Moldavia.

205. In the following, the art. placed *after* the adj. in Engl. must be placed before it in Germ.

Die beiden Kinder, both the children.

Die halbe Stadt, half the town. Der ganze Weg, all the way.

Eine halbe Stunde, half an hour. Ein halbes Maß, half a measure.

206. When *per* may be substituted for *a*, the def. art. is employed instead of the indefinite.

Eine Stunde *des* Tages, an hour *a* day.

Vier Schillinge *die* Flasche, four shillings *a* bottle.

. For the employment of the def. art. before the adv. in the superl. degree see Rs. 184 &c. ; for that of the art. for the Poss. Pron. see Rs. 100 and 101 ; and for that of *je* or *besto* for *the*, see R. 92.

207. The Indef. Art. is omitted :

a) Before *einige*, *wenige*, *a* few, *hundert* and *tausend*, unless the two last are used as concrete substs. and *ein* in the sense of one.

b) When the subst. before which it stands in Engl. may be viewed in the light of a predicate :

Ich bin Kaufmann, und er ist Soldat, I am *a* merchant, and he is *a* soldier.

Ich muß als Vater verfahren, I must proceed as *a* father.

c) In various phrases, which cannot be brought under any rule, but especially when the subst. is preceded by a prepos. or an adj.

Religiöser Sinn, *a* religious disposition.

Mit gutem Willen, with *a* good will. In Eile in *a* hurry.

Mit reinem Gewissen, with *a* clear conscience.

208. After a prepos., the Possess. Pron. is also often omitted.

Habe immer Gott vor Augen, have always God before *your* eyes.

Mit eigenen Händen, with *his* own hands.

Er hielt es in beiden Händen, he held it in both *his* hands.

Er that es mit eigener Hand, he did it with *his* own hand.

Du sollst Vater und Mutter ehren, thou shalt honor *thy* father and *thy* mother.

RELATION OF SUBSTS. TO EACH OTHER.

209. The Engl. language expresses the reciprocal relation of substs. by means of 's joined to one of them, or by means of the prep. *of*, and occasionally *to*, placed between them. The first of these forms, viz: the 's, as well as the prep. *to* is invariably, and *of* generally, rendered in Germ. by the Gen., (See R. 198 and examples).

Das Schloß des Kaisers, or des Kaisers Schloß, the emperor's palace.

Er ist Kammerherr der Königin, he is a chamberlain *to* the queen.

Der Umlauf der Erde, the revolution of the earth.

Die Macht des Vorurtheils, the power of prejudice.

Der Oheim des Jünglings, the uncle of the youth.

Der Kammerdiener unseres Fürsten, the valet of our prince.

Der Kragen meines Rockes, the collar of my coat.

210. *Of* however is rendered by a preposition:

a) Before substs. employed in a partitive sense, or such as could not take an article (like names of countries, &c. in the Neut. gender), and more particularly before substs. denoting the rank, title, or descent of a person, or the size, weight or capacity of a person or thing, by *von*:

Der Geruch von Citronen, the smell of lemons.

Die Mutter von vier Kindern, the mother of four children.

Der Umfang von London, und die Größe von Paris, the circumference of London, and the size of Paris.

Der Kolos von Rhodus und der Pharos von Messina, the colossus of Rhodes, and the Pharos of Messina.

Der König von Norwegen, the king of Norway.

Ein Mann von Stande, a man of rank³⁰.

Ein Herr von guter Familie, a gentleman of good family.

Eine Familie von altem Adel, a family of ancient nobility.

Ein Mann von Ehre, Gelehrsamkeit und hoher Tugend, a man of honour, learning and high virtue.

Ein Officier von ausgezeichnetem Verdienst, an officer of distinguished merit.

Ein Kind von drei Monaten, an infant of three months.

Ein Thurm von fünfzig Fuß Höhe, a tower of 50 feet height.

Ein Schiff von tausend Tonnen, und von zwanzig Canonen, a vessel of a thousand tons, and 20 guns.

b) When it is taken in the sense of *concerning*, also by von :

Schiller's Lied von der Glocke, Schiller's song of the bell.

c) When expressing the material of which things are made, by von or aus :

Ein Becher von Gold, a cup of gold³¹.

Eine Dose von Silber, a box of silver.

Die Bildsäule ist aus Cararischem Marmor gehauen, the statue is cut of Cararian marble.

d) When expressing locality, by bei :

Die Schlacht bei Prag, the battle of Prague.

e) When it expresses a tendency, by zu :

Liebe zu Gott³², love of (towards) God. Gewöhnung zur Arbeit, habit of labour.

³⁰ But we may say: der Geruch dieser Citronen, die Mutter jener vier Kinder, der Umfang Londons or der Stadt London, die Größe der Stadt Paris, der Koloss der Insel Rhodus, der König des kalten Norwegens, or (in the elevated style) Norwegens König (See R. 203, b. and Note 29), ein Mann dieses Standes.

³¹ We may however also say :

Ein goldener Becher, a golden cup. Eine silberne Dose, a silver snuff-box. Eine marmorne Bildsäule, a marble statue.

³² Liebe Gottes generally means, the love of God to man.

f) After substs. derived from intrans. verbs, when of must be rendered by the prep. required by those verbs :

Furcht v or dem Tode, fear of death.

Abſcheu vor dem Müßiggang, horror of idleness.

Durſt n a ſ Goldes, thirst of gold.

Der Gedanke a n die Gefahr, the thought of the danger.

Das Streben n a ſ Vergnügen, the pursuit of pleasure.

Sein Spott ü b e r ſeine Gegner, his derision of his enemies.

ſet v'or (or a n) Geſchäften, disgust of business³³ (Rs. 263 & 270).

g) Before the Part. Pres. which is turned in Germ. into an Inf. preceded by zu: (See 233).

Die Furcht zu ſterben, the fear of dying.

Die Begierde anzuhäufen, the desire of accumulating.

h) After Pronouns, by von or unter :

Derjenige von uns, he of us. Wer unter euch? who of you?

i) After numerals, by von :

Zwei von ihnen, two of them. Der erſte von euch, the first of you.

Viele von den Kriegern, many of the warriors.

k) After an adj. in the superlative, by von.

Der beſte von allen Römern (though we may also say aller Römer), the best of all Romans.

210. Sometimes the use of a prepos. indicates a different kind of relation from that of the Gen. e. gr.

Die Blüthe von jenem Baume, the blossom of that tree (taken from it).

Die Blüthe jenes Baumes, the blossom of that tree (belonging to it).

Ein Gemälde von Raphael, a picture of Raphael (viz: painted by him).

Ein Gemälde Raphael's, a portrait of (representing) Raphael.

³³ A few require prepos. altho' the verb from which they are derived governs the Acc. or the Gen.

Die Achtung vor den Geſetzen, the respect of the laws.

Reue über einen Fehler, repentance of a fault. Bedarf an Brod, the requisite quantity of bread.

Die Regimenter dieser Garnison, the regiments of (belonging to) this garrison.

Die Regimenter in dieser Garnison, the regiments placed in this garrison town.

Der Lehrer dieser Schule, the master of this school (the only one).

Ein Lehrer an dieser Schule, a master at this school.

Der Herr des Hauses, the owner of the house.

Der Herr vom Hause, the tenant of the house.

211. Proper names of countries and places, and the names of months stand in apposition with the preceding common names, that is to say, *of* is not attended to, and the latter subst. is put in the same case as the former :

Er ging im Monat März auf die Universität Heidelberg, im Großherzogthum Baden ; nachdem er die Monate Januar und Februar in der Stadt Frankfurt zugebracht hatte, he went in the month of March to the university of Heidelberg, in the grand-duchy of Baden ; after he had spent the months of January and February in the city of Frankfort.

212. *Of* is also omitted.

a) Before the name of a month preceded by an ordinal number: Den vierten Mai, the 4th of May.

b) Between substs. of weight, measure or other quantities, and those expressing substances or individuals, also after *voll* full, *if the prepos. is not followed by an art. pron. or adj.*

Ein Glas Wasser und eine Flasche Wein, a glass of water and a bottle of wine.

Einige Centner Blei und ein Pfund Gold, some hundred weights of lead, and a pound of gold.

Ein Regiment Soldaten ward von einem Haufen Leuten angefallen, a regiment of soldiers was attacked by a crowd of people.

Ein Flug Vögel setzte sich auf ein Schiff voll Matrosen, a flight of birds settled on a ship full of sailors³⁴.

³⁴ a) If followed by an art. or pron., *of* is always turned into the Gen :

Ein Regiment der Soldaten der Garnison, a regiment of the soldiers of the garrison.

213. The expression, *at a friend's*, meaning, at a friend's house, is rendered: *Bei einem Freunde*, or *In dem Hause eines Freundes*, or *In eines Freundes' Haus*.

214. The double Gen. used in Engl. e. gr. A servant of the duke's, which might also be turned into, One of the duke's servants, must be rendered by the latter form, viz.: *Einer von des Herzogs Bedienten*, or *von den Bedienten des Herzogs*.

215. When titles are placed before proper names preceded by *von*, the titles only are put in the Gen. contrary to the practice in Engl.: *Des Herzogs von York Andenten*, or *das Andenten des Herzogs von York*, the duke of York's memory³⁵.

FORMATION OF SENTENCES.

SIMPLE SENTENCES.

216. The simplest sentence is that of the subject joined to a predicate by means of the verbs *to be*, or *to become*.

Ein Glas meines Weines, a glass of my wine.

b) If followed by an adj. the subst. to which the adj. belongs may also be put in the Gen., but is in familiar language often placed in apposition with the former subst. as:

Ein Viertel Pfund grünen Thees, or *grüner Thee*, a quarter of a pound of green tea.

c) *Voll* sometimes adds *er* for *of*, without regard to the gender or number of the following subst. e. gr. *Voller Lärm*, full of noise. *Voller Heu*, full of hay. *Voller Zeichnungen*, full of drawings.

³⁵ a) In general it is preferred to place simple names, and those preceded by a title not requiring an art. before their governing noun, but those which require an art., or are preceded by an adj., after it.

Johann Heinrich Voss's Uebersetzung von Homer's Ilias, John Henry Voss's translation of Homer's Iliad.

Heinrich von Kleist's Werke, the works of H. von Kleist.

217. The predicate may be an adjective or participle (see Rs. 64 and 65), or a subst. either with, or without attributes, or even a poss. pronoun (see R. 115).

Das Nilpferd ist ein Thier, or ein vierfüßiges Thier, the hippopotamus is an animal, or a fourfooted animal (quadruped).

Der Sieg ist unser, the victory is ours.

218. Predicative substs. are generally in the Nom.; yet occasionally we find them in the Gen. as:

Er war frohen Muthes, he was of good cheer.

Ich bin Willens, I am inclined (of inclination).

Sie waren der Meinung, they were of opinion.

Es ist bei uns Rechtens, it is the legal custom with us.

219. Often the verb *to be* implies existence, when the sentence generally commences with *es*, but the verb agrees with the subst (see R. 115).

Es war ein alter Gebrauch im Lande, daß u. s. w. it was an old custom in the country that &c.

Es waren keine Gäste da, there were no guests there.

220. When the existence pointed at is of a general kind, we often use instead of *seyn*, the impers. *es giebt*, which corresponds with the French *il y a*, and always governs the Acc., sometimes also the verb *sich befinden*, to be found, or find oneself, which requires a Nom.

Es giebt noch manchen redlichen Mann, there is yet many an honest man.

Die Siege des Königs Ludwig des vierzehnten, the victories of king Louis XIV.

Die Besizungen des Grafen von N., the possessions of the count of N.

Die Schriften des berühmten Philosophen Kant, the writings of the celebrated philosopher Kant.

b) If titles are followed by names of persons, the latter are declined if they precede the governing noun, and the former, if they do not.

Kaiser Joseph's Leben, or das Leben des Kaisers Joseph, the emperor Joseph's life.

Es gab manche alte Gebräuche, there were many old customs.

Es wird bald Krieg geben, there will soon be war.

Es befinden sich viele Fremde unter ihnen, there are many strangers among them.

221. Predicative substs. relating to a female subject, must be made feminine, according to R. 14 :

Die Religion ist unsere Trösterin im Unglück, religion is our comforter in misfortune.

AGREEMENT OF THE VERB WITH ITS SUBJECT.

222. The agreement of the verb with the subject or Nom. is the same in both languages, except that in some instances when the Nom. consists of two substs. or more, in which we conceive a certain relation, or unity, the verb is put in the singular.

Reich und Arm ist dieser Meinung, rich and poor *are* of this opinion.

Himmel und Erde ist Zeuge seiner That, Heaven and earth *are* witnesses of his deed.

223. The verb always remains in the sing. after collective substs. used in the sing. number:

Der Ausschuß ist zu einer Entscheidung gekommen, the committee *have* come to a decision.

USE OF THE TENSES.

224. The *Present* is used to indicate :

a) Actual time : Ich esse, I am eating (see R. 159).

b) A continuous time : Ich bin schon sechzehn Jahre in England, I have been these sixteen years in England.³⁶

c) A perpetual state : Die Seele ist unsterblich, the soul is immortal.

³⁶ Care must be taken not to use the Perfect in such phrases, as it would imply, that the state or action we are speaking of is at an end.

d) A Future, if the time is near at hand, and considered as certain : Ich gehe nächstens auf's Land, I shall go shortly into the country.

e) A past time, in historical accounts, with a view of giving a greater vivacity to a narrative ; in which it is much more frequently employed than in English.

225. The *Imperfect* is used to denote a time past with regard to the speaker, but not past with regard to other circumstances which were taking place at the same period, whether expressed or merely implied. For this reason it is also employed as the common historical tense :

Ich aß, als er kam, I was eating, when he came.

Er kam oft zu mir, he often came to me.

Cæsar eroberte zuerst Gallien, und schiffte dann nach Britannien über, Cæsar first conquered Gaul, and then crossed over to Britain.

226. The *Perfect* denotes :

a) Past circumstances without reference to any particular time : Ich habe auch den König gesehen, I have also seen the king.

b) Recent events, especially if the speaker has witnessed them himself : Gestern ist ein Kind ertrunken, yesterday a child was drowned.

. The other tenses are employed nearly the same as in English ; yet care must be taken not to mistake shall or will, and should or would, indicating the Future or Conditional, with the same words implying an obligation or volition.

USE OF THE MOODS.

THE INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE.

227. The German language offers as few fixed rules on the use of these Moods as the English. As a general principle however it may be laid down, that, if we wish to affirm, deny, or inquire about, a fact as an actual existence or oc-

currence, we use the *Ind.* If, on the contrary, we advance it as a mere probability or possibility, we generally employ the *Subj.*; ³⁷ as may be seen from the following examples.

Indicative.

Ich weiß, daß er es ist, I know
that it is he.

Ich glaube, gewiß, daß er todt ist,
I believe, for a certainty,
that he is dead.

Ich zweifle, daß er es hat, I doubt
his having it.

Wir hoffen daß er glücklich ange=
kommen ist, we hope he is
safely arrived

Ich bin überzeugt, daß es ihm ge=
lingen wird, I am convinced
he will succeed.

Ich habe gehört, daß er sich ver=
heirathen wird, I have heard
he is about to be married.

Subjunctive.

Er meint, ich könne alles thun,
he thinks I can do every
thing

Ich rathe ihm, daß er sich an=
strengt, I advise him to ³⁸
exert himself.

Willst du, daß man dich nicht
table, if you wish not to be
found fault with.

Ich bitte, daß er sich meiner erin=
nere, I beg that he will re=
member me.

Wenn Sie nicht gewiß sind, daß
es Ihnen gelingen werde, if
you be not sure that you
will succeed.

Man sagt, daß er sich nächstens ver=
heirathen werde, ³⁹ they say,
he is shortly to be married.

³⁷ The conjunctions by which a verb may happen to be preceded can be no guide, in this particular, as may be seen in various instances.

³⁸ The *Inf.* or *Partic. Pres.* employed as the object of a verb, is often turned in Germ. by *daß* with the verb in the *Ind.* or *Subj.* mood.

³⁹ If we intend to state that which we mention either in our name or in that of others, as a *fact*, we must employ the *Ind.*; but if, on the contrary, we wish merely to say that we, or some one else, have *stated something*, this statement must be in the *Subj.*

Indicative.

Sie sagt es selbst, daß sie all ihr Geld verzehrt hat, she says herself that she has spent all her money.

Schon Sokrates hat gesagt, daß es eine göttliche Vorsehung giebt, even Socrates has said that there is a divine providence.

Er erzählt überall, daß er in Algier gewesen ist, he relates every where that he has been in Algiers.

Ich versichere Ihnen, ich war da, I assure you, I was there.

Ich kenne ihn, wenn er auch nicht spricht, I know him, altho' he does not speak.

Wenn, das was er behauptet,

Subjunctive.

Sie sagt, sie habe kein Geld mehr, she says she has no more money.⁴⁰

Aber er sagte auch, er habe⁴¹ einen Dämon, der ihn über alles belehre, but he also said that he had a familiar spirit who instructed him in every thing.

Er behauptet, er sey neulich in Neapel gewesen, he asserts that he has lately been at Naples.

Ich versicherte ihm, ich sey ein Deutscher, I assured him that I was a German.

Ich würde ihn kennen, wenn er auch nicht spräche, I should know him, altho' he were not to speak.

Wenn es wahr wäre, so würde

⁴⁰ Using the Subj. in stating the assertions of others, is not implying a doubt of their truth, but simply that we do not state them as facts which have come under our own cognizance.

⁴¹ In phrases like these the Pres. or Imperf. is used, without regard to the tense of the preceding verb, but solely with regard to the tense the person making the assertion would have used at the time he spoke. The Pres. in this instance therefore implies, that when Socrates made the assertion, he said : I have a familiar spirit.

Yet if the Pres. Subj. offers no distinction from the Pres. Ind. the Imperf. Subj. is preferred: Er erzählt, sie hätten (for haben) sich geschlagen, he relates that they have been fighting.

Indicative.

wahr ist, if, what he asserts,
be true.

Ich weiß nicht, ob es rathsam ist,
I do not know whether it
be advisable.

Wenn er es gut mit uns meint,
so thut er es, if he is favour-
able to us, he will do it.

228. The Subj. is farther used :

a) As an optative, i. e. to express a wish:

Erschiene doch nie der Tag ! May the day never appear !

Gebe es der Himmel ! Heaven grant it !

b) As a conditional :

Ich hätte⁴² es nie von ihm erwartet ! I should never have expected it from him !

Wäre⁴³ ich an ihrer Stelle, so hätte ich es unternommen, were I in your situation, I would have undertaken it.

Wenn er nur zu Hause bliebe, so würde er bald wieder hergestellt seyn, if he did but stay at home, he would soon recover.

Wohl stünd's zu ändern, it might be remedied indeed.

Ich wüßte nicht, wie ich es hindern könnte, I should not know how to obviate it.

229. As there is but little variation in the form of the moods, especially in the regular verbs, the Imperf. of the verbs müssen, sollen, wollen, können, dürfen und mögen,⁴⁴ are also used in modifying the verb, and are therefore called moodal verbs ; e. gr.

⁴² In this and in the second member of the next sentence, we may also say :

Ich würde es nie von ihm erwartet haben, and ich würde es unternommen haben. Würde is however also of the Subj. mood.

⁴³ Wenn as well as daß may be omitted, as *if* and *that* are in Engl.

⁴⁴ It is particularly worthy of remark that these verbs, so very im-

Er müßte es denn nicht gestehen wollen, unless he would not confess it.

Sie sollten es selbst gebracht haben, you ought to have brought it yourself.

Ich wollte, Sie ließen es geschehen, I wish you would allow it to take place.

Könnte ich nur, wie ich wollte, if I could but (do) as I might wish.

Er möchte wohl hingehen, wenn er es dürfte, he would like to go there if he dared.

Dürfte ich es nur bekennen! if I were but allowed to confess it!

Möchte ich es doch nicht verletzt haben! would I had not injured it!

perfect in Engl. are employed in Germ. in all their moods, and tenses exc. the Part. Pres.

EXAMPLES.

Dürfen and **können**; the former of which indicates the absence of a moral or mental restraint, and the latter the absence of physical restriction :

Er hätte nicht ausgehen dürfen, or er würde nicht haben ausgehen dürfen, he would not have been allowed to go out.

Ich werde zwar ausfahren dürfen, werde aber schwerlich können, I shall indeed be allowed to drive out, but I shall hardly be able.

Wenn ich es geburft hätte, so hätte ich es auch gekonnt, if I had been allowed, I should also have been able.

Mögen, which indicates inclination, or desire :

Ich habe mich nicht mit ihm abgeben mögen, I have had no desire to have any intercourse with him.

Ich würde es nicht mögen, I should not wish it.

Wenn ich es auch geburft hätte, ich hätte es nicht gemocht, If I had even dared, I should not have wished it.

Müssen and **sollen**, which both imply obligation ; only the former is irresistible, being the impulse of necessity, and the latter the dictate of duty, or an implied obligation, in consequence of the desire of others :

Ich hätte es thun müssen, I should have been obliged to do it.

THE IMPERATIVE.

230. This mood is generally used as in Engl. Often however the Part. Past is employed instead of it, as a peremptory command: *Aufgepaßt!* attend! *Abmarschirt!* march off!

231. We also use the 2d. pers. Sing. of the Ind. Pres. in commanding authoritatively; and on the other hand, submissively, the Pres. Subj. of *wollen*.

Du gehorchest! Obey!—*Sie wollen mir verzeihen*, you will pardon me.

THE INFINITIVE.

232. The use of the Inf. is, in general the same in both languages. Yet in various instances the Germ. language prefers the employment of some tense of the Ind. or Subj. mood preceded by the conj. *daß*, or some other conj. or adv. corresponding with that by which the Engl. Inf. may happen to be preceded, e. gr.

Do you believe that to be true? *Glauben Sie, daß dieß wahr sey?*

I did not suspect him to be that fellow, *ich ließ es mir nicht einfallen, daß er der Kerl wäre.*

They do not know how to employ themselves, *sie wissen nicht, wie sie sich beschäftigen sollen.*

Sie haben zu früh sterben müssen, they have been doomed to die too soon.

Er wird Holländisch lernen müssen, he will be obliged to learn Dutch.

Sie hatte da bleiben sollen, she was to have stayed there.

Sie hätte nicht so bald abreisen sollen, she ought not to have started so soon.

Man wird sich in Allem nach ihnen richten sollen, one will be wanted to conform in every thing to their caprice.

Wollen to be willing:

Ich habe nicht gewollt, I have not been willing.

Du hättest dich nicht nach den Umständen richten wollen, thou hadst not been willing to conform to the circumstances, (see R. 241).

Wenn er auch will, so werde ich doch nicht wollen, though he may be willing, I shall not.

He never knew when, or whither, to go, er wußte nie, wann, oder wohin er gehen sollte.

Did you tell him, what to do? Haben Sie ihm gesagt, was er thun muß?

233. The prep. zu, alluded to R. 178 is often placed before it, as *to* is before the Engl. Inf., especially when the Inf. could be turned into any of the tenses of the Ind. or Subj., preceded by the conj. daß; e. gr.

Gelegenheit zu handeln, opportunity of acting.

Die Lust zu reisen, the desire of travelling.

Wir befahlen ihm zu kommen, we ordered him to come.

Wir fingen an zu arbeiten, we began to work.

Ich hoffe ihnen zu gefallen, I hope to please them.

Es ist ihm erlaubt auszugehen, he is permitted to go out.

Er hat nichts zu besorgen, he has nothing to apprehend.

Sie schien nichts davon zu wissen, she seemed to know nothing of it.

Es ist löblich sein Vaterland zu lieben, it is laudable to love one's country.

234. It is particularly required before the Inf. Active, which must be used instead of the Inf. Passive, after the verb *to be*, in phrases as the following:

Sein Benehmen ist zu loben, his conduct is *to be praised*.

Ein solcher Character ist zu tadeln, such a character is *to be blamed*.

Dieser Brief ist abzuschreiben, this letter is *to be copied*.

235. When the verb *to be* is omitted, the Inf. is turned into an attributive adj. taking the form of the Part. Pres but retains zu:

Ein zu lobendes Benehmen, a conduct to be praised.

Ein zu tadelnder Character, a character to be blamed.

Ein abzuschreibender Brief, a letter to be copied.

236. The Inf. with zu is also required after prepositions:

Anstatt anzufangen, instead of beginning.

Ohne es einzugestehen, without confessing it.

Um es nicht abzulehnen, in order not to refuse it.

237. It is used without zu :

a) As the subj. of a verb, (when it is regarded as a real subst. and written with a capital initial).

Das Rauschen jedes Blattes erschreckt den Bösewicht, the rustling of every leaf alarms the wicked.

Borgen ist leichter als Wiederbezahlen, borrowing is easier than re-paying.

b) After the verbs :

bleiben to remain, to continue	lehren to teach
dürfen to dare	lernen to learn
fahren to drive	machen to make (to cause)
fühlen to feel	mögen to desire
gehen to go	müssen to be obliged
heißen to bid or call	nennen to name
helfen to help	reiten to ride
hören to hear	sehen to see
lassen to let, or cause	sollen to be obliged
sich legen to lie down	wollen to be willing. <i>Examples.</i>

Er blieb liegen, sitzen oder stehen, he continued lying, sitting or standing*.

Ich darf es nicht thun, I must not do it.

Wir fuhren spazieren, we took a drive*.

Fühlen Sie das Herz schlagen? do you feel the heart beat?

Er gieng ehemals haufiren, he formerly went about hawking*.

Wer hat ihn schweigen geheißen? who has bidden him to be silent?

Helfen Sie mir das Geld zählen, help me to count the money.

Wir hörten sie kommen, we heard them come.

Was läßt er sich machen⁴⁵? what is he having made*.

Kinder, legt euch schlafen! children, go to bed*.

Er lehrt mich zeichnen, he teaches me drawing*.

⁴⁵ The verb lassen is used like the French *faire*, in the sense of *to allow* or *cause*, and requires, as *faire* does, an *Inf. active*. after it:

Lassen Sie einen Arzt kommen, send for a physician (*faites venir un médecin*).

Machen sie mich nicht lachen, do not make me laugh.

Das nenne ich fleißig seyn, that I call being industrious*.

c) After thun, followed by nichts als, and after haben, in a few particular phrases :

Sie thun ja nichts als herumlaufen, why, you do nothing but run about.

Sie habt gut lachen, it is easy for you to laugh, (the French: *vous avez beau rire**).

Er hat einen Bedienten im Vorzimmer warten, he has a servant waiting in the ante-room†.

d) Also occasionally after the adjs. gut, böse, übel, schlecht, connected with seyn :

Hier ist nicht gut seyn, wohnen, bleiben, it is not good (agreeable), to be, dwell, remain here.

e) After werde and würde in the Future and Conditional.

238. *How*, often found before the Engl. Inf. is not rendered in Germ.

He does not know *how* to conduct himself, er weiß sich nicht zu benehmen.

THE PARTICIPLES.

239. The Part. Past, as has been seen, is used to form various tenses with the help of auxiliary verbs; but the Part. Pres. is never employed with a verbal power†, except occasionally as a gerund. Their chief use, besides the one stated, is as adjectives, (predicates or attributes). In trans. verbs, the Part. Pres. is of an active kind, and the Past, of a passive, as der züchtigende Vater und das gezüchtigte Kind, the chastising father, and the chastised child; but in neuter verbs, the Part. Past is also active, differing from the Pres.

† Notice the difference of idioms in the above phrases marked*, especially with regard to the substitution of the Inf. as verbal substa. for the Part. Pres.

‡ Especially not with the verb *to be* (see R. 159).

only with regard to time; *der fallende Apfel und der gefallene*, the falling apple and the fallen one*.

240. The Part. Pres. is never used as a verbal subst. which is generally rendered by the Inf. (see the examples to R. 237, b).

241. The verbs *dürfen*, *helfen*, *heissen*, *hören*, *können*, *lassen*, *lehren*, *lernen*, *mögen*, *müssen*, *sehen*, *sollen* and *wollen*, usually change their Part. Past into an Inf., when another Inf. is dependent on it, as:

Sie hat mit zeichnen helfen, she has helped me to draw.

Wer hat es ihn thun heissen? who has bid him do it?†

242. Both participles are used as adverbs of time, manner, cause or condition, or what is called, the *gerund*:

Meine Aeltern auf dem Lande besuchend, wurde ich von Räubern angefallen, going to visit my parents in the country, I was attacked by robbers.

Sie sprach dies lächelnd, she said this smiling.

Sie geht nie anders als gepußt aus, she never goes out but fully dressed.

Sie kamen gegangen, *gelaufen*, *gefahren*, *geritten*, *gerudert*, they came on foot, running, in a carriage, riding, rowing.

Er stand auf seinen Stab gelehnt, he stood leaning on his staff⁴⁰.

Nach auf ihn verlassend, wurde ich hintergangen, relying on him, I was deceived.

Von dir unterstützt, muß ich siegen, supported by thee, I must conquer.

* The Part. Pres. with *zu*, (see R. 235) may either be active or passive.

† For the signification of these verbs, and more examples, see R. 229 and Note 44.

⁴⁰ In this and the preceding example, as is often done, the Part. Past is used for the Pres.; but it would perhaps be more correct always to use the Part. Pres. for an *active* present time.

Seinen Unfall ausgenommen, ging's⁴⁷ ihm gut, except that mischance, he was well off.⁴⁸

243. It is however more usual in Germ. to turn the gerund into an accessory sentence, headed by the conjunctions, *da* as, *indem* or *während* whilst, *wenn* if, &c. especially the compound gerund, (which does not exist in the language), with the conj. *nachdem* after, *als* when, *da* since.

Standing at the window, I can see him, *da* (or *indem*) *ich an dem Fenster stehe*, kann ich ihn sehen.

Standing at the door, I could see it, *da* (*als*, *indem*) *ich an der Thüre stand*, konnte ich es sehen.

Standing here, you will see it, *wenn Sie hier stehen*, so werden Sie es sehen.

Having stood on the tower, you must have noticed it, *da Sie auf dem Thurme gestanden haben*, so müssen Sie es bemerkt haben.

Having seen it, I was summoned as a witness, *da ich es gesehen hatte*, so wurde ich als Zeuge vorgeladen.

Having said this, he departed, *nachdem er dieses gesagt hatte*, entfernte er sich, (R. 2).

244. Sometimes the gerund is turned into a co-ordinate sentence with *und*, *wie*, or *mit*:

The good old man said this smiling, *der gute Greis sagte dieses, und lächelte*, or *mit Lächeln*.

Samson betrayed by Delilah, *Simson, wie er von der Delila verrathen wird*.

245. In the elevated style, the gerund is sometimes suppressed, and the subst. it should govern appears like an accusative absolute:

Einen Dolch im Gürtel, *nahte sie sich*, (having or carrying) a dagger in her belt, she approached.

⁴⁷ 's is often employed for *es*.

⁴⁸ Notwithstanding these examples, the gerund is seldom used in Germ. with relation to a subject, different from the Nom.

OBJECTIVE SENTENCES.

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS AND ADJECTIVES.

246. Most verbs, as well as a considerable number of adjectives, when used as predicates, leave the sense of a sentence incomplete, without the adjunct of one or more substs., pronouns or adverbs, indicating their object or cause, as well as their relations of locality, time and manner.

247. The relations of *object* or *cause* are expressed by cases or prepositions; as:

Ich habe ihn gesehen, und freue mich über seine Ankunft, I have seen *him*, and rejoice *at his arrival*.

248. The relations of *time* are expressed either by cases or prepos., or by adverbs:

Ich sah sie diesen Morgen, dieser Tage,⁴⁹ (heute, neulich), I saw them *this morning, these days, (to-day, lately)*.

249. The relations of *locality* and *manner*, by prepos., or adverbs:

LOCALITY: Sie leben auf dem Lande (da), they live in *the country (there)*.

MANNER: Er antwortete mit Zorn (zornig), he answered *with anger (angrily)*.

250. The cases or prepos. expressing relations, are called the government of the verbs or adjectives. The cases governed by them are: 1, the Acc; 2, the Acc. and Dat.; 3, the Acc. and Gen.; 4, the Gen.; 5, the Dat. by itself.

THE ACCUSATIVE.

251. This case expresses the *objective* relation, and is therefore also called the objective case.—It is required:

⁴⁹ The cases used to express this kind of relation seem to be always substitutes for prepos., as we might say in these instances an diesem Morgen, in diesen Tagen.

a) By all transitive verbs, as :

Ich kaufte einen Bogen Papier, I bought a sheet of paper.

Die Pferde fressen den Hafer, the horses eat the oats.

Sie haben keinen General, they have no general.

b) Occasionally after a neuter verb ; as :

Er geht einen Gang, he goes (takes) a walk.

Er läßt sich gehen, he lets himself go.

Ich sitze, stehe, gehe, laufe, huste mich, müde or krank, I sit, stand, walk, run, cough myself, tired or ill.

Er spricht, läuft sich außer Athem, he speaks, runs himself out of breath.

Schreiben Sie sich nicht blind, do not write yourself blind.

c) By substantives expressing the relation of time in a *definite*⁵⁰ manner.

Wir empfangen es diesen Morgen, we received it this morning.

d) Adjectives of dimension (occasionally used also with the Gen.) as : Es ist einen Thaler werth, it is worth a dollar.

alt old

lang long

breit broad

reich rich

dicke thick

schwer heavy

groß large, big

weit wide, far

hoch high

werth worth.

e) The interjections oh ! and ach ! but which are also used with the Dat. Oh, mich unglücklichen, oh unhappy me !

THE ACCUSATIVE AND THE DATIVE.

252. Transitive verbs expressing an action of giving, imparting or bestowing, or, on the contrary, removing or taking away, require the person or thing to whose advantage or disadvantage the action tends to be, in the Dat. but the *immediate* object of the action, in the Acc. e. gr.

Er gab mir (Dat.) einen Beutel (Acc.) und meinem Reisegefährten

⁵⁰ When the time is to be expressed in an *indefinite* manner, we generally use the Gen. according to R. 183.

Sie besucht uns zwei Mal des Jahres, she visits us twice a year.

(Dat.) eine Gabel (Acc.), he gave to me a spoon and to my travelling companion a fork.

Die Diebe nahmen ihm (Dat.) seinen Geldbeutel (Acc.), the thieves took him his purse; or, according to the English idiom, took his purse from him⁵¹. Such verbs are:

ansinnen to propose	leisten to afford
befehlen to order	liefern to furnish
bahnen to make way	melben to announce
berichten to report	nehmen to take away
bezahlen, zahlen to pay	offenbaren to reveal
bieten to offer	opfern to sacrifice
borgen to lend	rathen to advise (one)
bringen to bring	rauben to rob (one)
empfehlen to recommend	reichen to reach
geben to give	rufen to call
gebieten to command	sagen to say
geloben to promise	schenken to present
gestatten to permit	schicken to send
gewähren to grant	senden to send
glauben to believe (one)	stehlen to steal
gönnen to wish, allow un-	verwehren to forbid
grudgingly	verweisen to reprove
holen to fetch	weißen to consecrate
klagen to complain	widmen to devote
kochen to cook	wünschen to wish
lassen to leave	zeigen to show, &c.
leihen to lend	

253. Reflective verbs, not mentioned in R. 258, *b*, make the *person* in the Acc. and the *thing* in the Dat.

Du hast dich dem Spiele ergeben, thou hast devoted thyself (Acc.) to gaming (Dat.).

Der Gedanke drängte sich mir auf, the thought forced itself (Acc.) upon me (in Germ. the Dat.).

⁵¹ It often happens that one of the cases is omitted, as instead of: er hat ihm einen Brief geschrieben, either; er hat einen Brief geschrieben, or: er hat ihm geschrieben.

254. *heißen* or *nennen* to call (or name), *schelten* or *schimpfen* to call bad names, and *taufen* to name at the baptism, (frequently also *lehren* to teach,) require both cases in the Acc. :

Sie nannte ihn einen Thoren, she called him a fool; which in the *Passive voice* must be turned into two nominatives, viz : *Er wurde von ihr ein Thor genannt*, he was called a fool by her.

THE ACCUSATIVE AND GENITIVE.

255. Several transitive verbs require the *person* (object) in the Acc., and the thing (cause) in the Gen.

Man hat ihn (pers.) eines Verbrechens (cause) angeklagt, they have accused him of a crime.

Such verbs are :

<i>anklagen</i> to accuse	<i>entledigen</i> to free from
<i>belehren</i> to instruct	<i>entwöhnen</i> to wean from
<i>berauben</i> to rob	<i>losprechen</i> to acquit
<i>beschuldigen</i> , <i>bezüglich</i> , <i>zeigen</i> to accuse	<i>mahnen</i> to remind
<i>entbinden</i> , <i>entladen</i> , <i>entlasten</i> , to disburden	<i>überführen</i> to convict
<i>entkleiden</i> to divest	<i>überheben</i> to relieve from
<i>entlassen</i> , <i>entsetzen</i> *, to dismiss from	<i>überzeugen</i> to convince
	<i>verweisen</i> † to banish
	<i>versichern</i> to make sure of
	<i>würbigen</i> to honour with

256. Most reflective verbs require the *person* (relating to the subject) in the Acc. and the *object* in the Gen. :

Ich habe mich (pers.) seiner (obj.) bedient, I have made use of him.

Wir enthalten uns (pers.) schwerer Speise (obj.), we refrain from heavy food.

Such verbs are :

* *Entsetzen* to terrify, belongs to R. 251.

† *Verweisen* to reprove, belongs to R. 252.

sich annehmen to interest one- self	sich entübrigen to spare
sich bedienen to make use of	sich entwöhnen to wean from
sich befeßigen to apply oneself	sich erbarmen§ to take pity on
sich begeben† to renounce	sich erwehren to defend oneself from
sich bemächtigen to lay hold of	sich freuen to rejoice at
sich bemeistern to make oneself master of	sich getrösten to refer one's hope
sich bescheiden to be content with	sich rühmen to boast of
sich besinnen to recollect	sich schämen to be ashamed of
sich entäußern to dispose of	sich überheben to be conceited of
sich enthalten, sich entbrechen, to refrain from	sich versehen¶ to expect
sich entschlagen to dismiss (from one's mind)	sich wehren to defend oneself
sich entsinnen, sich erinnern ‡ to remember	sich weigern to refuse
	sich unterfangen, sich unterwinden, sich vermaßen, to presume

THE GENITIVE.

257. This case expresses the relation of cause, and is required:

a) By the following verbs; generally however only in the higher style, since all those marked *, in familiar language, prefer the Acc. as:

Wir bedürfen seines Beistandes, or seinen Beistand, we want his assistance.

achten** to mind	enthalten to refrain from
bedürfen, brauchen* to want	ermangeln to fail in
denken, gedenken††, to think of	erwähnen to mention
entbehren* to dispense with	gebrauchen* to use

† Sich begeben to betake oneself, belongs to R. 309.

‡ Also with an, see R. 263, b.

§ Also with über, see R. 263, N. II.

|| Also with über.

¶ Versetzen to provide with, takes mit.

** Achten to respect, always requires the Acc.

†† Also with an.

genießen* to enjoy	spotten to deride
harrten to wait anxiously	verfehlen* to miss, (a person or
lachen† to laugh at	thing we wish to meet)
mißbrauchen* to make a bad	vergeffen* to forget
use of	wahrnehmen* to perceive
Pflegen‡ to devote oneself to	warten§ to wait for
ſchonen* to spare	

Also leben to live, ſterben to die, and ſeyn, with some particular substantives ; as :

Ich lebe or bin der Hoffnung, der Meinung, des Glaubens, &c. (See R. 218.)

b) By the following adjs. ; many of which are formed from verbs just mentioned, and others from obsolete verbs, or such as require different cases :

Des Geldes Bedürftig, in want of money.

N.B. Most of them require the Gen. also in Engl. and may be mostly known by their admitting of the questions, *of whom ?* or *of what ?* as :

bedürftig, benöthigt, in want of	müde tired of
beſſen intent upon	ſatt satiated with
befugt entitled to	ſchuldig guilty of
bewußt conscious of	theilhaft participating in
eingedenk mindful of	überbrüßig weary of
fähig capable of	verblühen grown pale (dead)
froh glad of	verluſtig deprived of
gewiß certain of	verdächtig suspected of
habhaft possessed of¶	verluſtig deprived of
kundig acquainted with	voll full of (see R. 212, b).

† Also with über, R. 263, N.II.

‡ In the sense of to nurse, cherish, take care of, it may take the Gen. or Acc.

§ More frequently with auf, see R. 263,d.

|| Also uneingedenk unmindful, unfähig, and all others which may take the privative un.

¶ Sie ſind ſeiner habhaft geworden, they have got hold of him.

lebig, loß, quitt, quit of	wertß worth
mächtigt capable of	würdtg worthy of

THE DATIVE.

258. This case generally expresses the relation which an action bears to the subject itself, or to another person, and is required :

a) By most intransitive verbs, such as the following:

Abhelfen to relieve	beistehen to assist
abrathen to dissuade	bleiben to remain
ähneln to bear some likeness	danken to thank
anhängen to adhere to	däuchten,* scheinen, vorkommen,
ansehen or lassen to become,	to seem
suit	bauern, wahren to last
antworten to answer	bienen to serve
auffallen, to surprise	drohen to threaten
aufslauern to lie in wait for	eckeln, wibern to disgust
aufpassen to watch for	eignen to belong to
aufstoßen to meet with	einleuchten to convince
aufwarten to wait upon	einstehen to answer for
ausbelfen to supply	entfallen to fall from
ausweichen to make way for	entfahren,† entgegen, entlaufen,
begegnet to meet	entspringen, entweichen, entwi-
behagen to please	schen, to escape from
bekommen to agree with	entsagen to renounce
bevorstehen to impend	entsprechen to correspond with
beifallen, einfallen to occur	entstehen to arise
beikommen to overcome	entwachsen to grow from
beipflichten, beifallen, beistimmen,	erlauben to allow
beitreten to accord with	erscheinen to display itself

* Mich däuchtet is often used impersonally for *methinks*, and is sometimes found with the Acc. ; but dünken, which is synonymous with it, always takes the Acc.

† All these verbs signify an escape, by means of the action or motion implied in the verb joined to ent, as : gehen to go, laufen to run, &c.

erwarten to expect	hulbigen to do homage
erweisen to show to	kosten to cost
erwidern to reply to	lächeln to smile
fehlen, ⁵² mangeln to be wanting	leuchten to emit light
fehlſchlagen to fail	lohnē to reward
fluchen to curse	mißfallen to displease
folgen to follow	mißglücken, mißlingen to fail
fröhnen to do service to	nachahmen to imitate
gebühren to be due	nacharten to be like
gefallen to please	nachdenken* to reflect upon
gehören to obey	nacheifern to emulate
gehören, angehören to belong	nachgeben to give way
gelingen, ⁵³ glücken, gerathen, ge- beihen to succeed	nachſingen† to sing after
genügen to suffice	nützen to be useful
gereichen to turn out to	obliegen to be incumbent on
geſchehen to happen	paſſen to wait for
geziemen, ziemen to be proper	ſchaden to injure
gleichen to resemble	ſchmecken‡ to taste
helfen to help	ſchmeicheln to flatter
	ſteuern to restrain

⁵² Es fehlt (or mangelt) mir Geld signifies, I *miss* some money; but es fehlt or mangelt mir a n Geld, I am deficient in money.

⁵³ These 3 verbs, as well as fehlſchlagen, mißglücken and mißlingen, if the subject of the English verb is a person, require it to be turned into the Dat., and the thing stated to have succeeded or failed, to be turned into a Nom.

The enemies have succeeded in their enterprise den Feinden iſt ihr Unternehmen (Nom.) gelungen.

They failed in their plan, Ihr Plan iſt ihnen mißlungen.

If the object is not expressed in Engl., the German verb is made impersonal, with the subject in the Dat.

He has succeeded or failed, es iſt ihm geglückt ober fehlgeſchlagen.

* Also with über (see R. 263 h. III.)

† And others with nach, whether the prep. expresses *following*, or *imitating* (see Note 24).

‡ This verb requires the same reversion in the subject and object as

trauen to trust	wehren to defend
trogen to bid defiance	weichen to yield
unterliegen to be overcome by	widerfahren to happen to
unterwerfen to subject	widersprechen to contradict
verbieten to forbid	widerstehen to resist
vergeben, verzeihen to pardon	willfahren to comply with
verhehlen to conceal	winken to beckon
versagen to deny	zufließen to flow to
versichern to assure	zuhören to listen to
versprechen to promise	zusammen to be due
verunglücken to get into a mis- fortune	zurufen to call out to
vorarbeiten to prepare	zusagen to suit
vorbeugen to anticipate	zuschreiben to ascribe
vorkommen to appear	zustossen to happen to
vorleuchten to be an example to	zusehen to look at
vorlesen to read to	zutrinken to drink to
wahrsagen to prophesy	zuvorkommen to anticipate.
	zuwinken* to beckon to

b) The following *reflective* :

sich anmaßen to assume	sich vorstellen to represent to oneself
sich ausbedingen to bargain	
sich einbilden to imagine	sich vornehmen to resolve
sich getrauen to dare	

c) The following *Impersonal* verbs :

es ahnet mir I forbode	es schwindeelt mir I am giddy, or
es beliebt mir I desire	es schwindeelt mir der Kopf, my head is turning
es gebriecht mir I want	
es grauet or gräuelst mir (vor) I am horrified (at)	es schimmert mir vor den Augen, something is glimmering before my eyes
es kommt an it depends	

gelingen : I do not relish my food, mein Essen schmeckt mir nicht.

Have you a good appetite? schmeckt es Ihnen?

* And other intrans. compounded with ab, an, auf, bei, ein, entgegen, nach, unter, vor and zu.

es schwebt mir vor den Augen, es träumt mir, I am dreaming
 something is hovering be- es verschlägt mir nichts, it makes
 fore my sight no difference to me
 es thut mir leid, I am sorry es wurmt ihm, it annoys him

d) The following adjectives ; many of which also take the
 Dat. in Engl. answering to the question : to whom ?

abtrünnig unfaithful	entbehrlich dispensable
ähnlich like	ergeben devoted
angeboren, angestammt born with	erträglich bearable
angerebt transmitted to by in-	erwünscht desirable
heritance	frei free
angehörig belonging	fremd strange
angelegen concerned for	freundlich kind
angemessen suitable	gebehrlich wholesome
angenehm agreeable	gegenwärtig present
anhängig attached	gehorsam obedient
anständig becoming	geläufig familiar
anstoßig offensive	gelegen opportune
ärgerlich vexatious	gemäß suited to
bange afraid	gemein common
bedenklich critical	geneigt, gewogen inclined to,
begreiflich conceivable	kind
bebaglich comfortable	gewachsen equal to, i. e. suffi-
behußlich serviceable	cient to
bekannt known	gleich equal to
beliebig agreeable	gleichgültig indifferent
bequem convenient	gnädig gracious
bewußt known	günstig favourable
dankebar * grateful	gut good
dientlich serviceable	heilsam wholesome (for)
eigen own, peculiar	hinderlich opposing
eigenthümlich peculiar	hoß kind
einträglich productive	lästig troublesome

* As well as others ending in bar (see Affixes).

leicht easy	unbeschadet without detriment
lieb dear	unvergessen not to be forgotten
kalt cold	unverhofft unhoped for
möglich possible	unwiderstehlich irresistible
nachtheilig injurious	unzeitig inopportune
nahe near	verantwortlich responsible
nöthig, nothwendig necessary	verbindlich obliging
nützlich useful	verbunden obliged
peinlich painful	verdächtig suspicious
recht right	verderblich injurious
schädlich injurious	verdrüsslich vexatious
schändlich, schlimm, schimpflich disgraceful	verhaßt hateful
schmeichelt flattening	verständlich intelligible
schmerzhaft painful	verwandt related
schreckhaft, schrecklich terrible	vortheilhaft advantageous
schuldig guilty	worth dear, " worthy
schwer difficult	warm warm
schwinblig giddy	widerlich disgusting
treu or getreu faithful	widerständig refractory
treulos faithless	widerwärtig adverse
tröstlich consolatory	widrig contrary to
trügllich deceiving	willkommen welcome
übel ill, sick, bad	wohl well
überflüssig, superfluous	zugänglich accessible
überlegen superior	zugebacht intended to
übrig, over, i. e. remaining	zugezogen attached
unausstehlich, unbearable	zuständig belonging to
	zuträglich beneficial

259. The Dat. is also taken by other adjs. preceded by zu too. However these, as well as many of R. 258 d, may take für²⁴ with the Acc. instead of the Dat.

²⁴ *Worth* in the sense of *worth*, connected with a denomination of coin, requires the Acc., but otherwise the Gen.; and in the sense of *dear*, the Dat.

²⁵ In familiar language für is often used after verbs in preference

Dies ist mir zu groß, or zu groß für mich, this is too large for me.

Es ist mir bequem, or bequem für mich, it is convenient for me.

Es ist ihm (or für ihn) nichts gut genug, there is nothing good enough for him.

But there are some which cannot be used except with the *at. e. gr.*

Es wird Ihnen nicht schwer (leicht) fallen or ankommen, you will not find it difficult (or easy).

Es kommt mir ganz gelegen, or eben recht, it comes quite opportunely for me.

Es steht Ihnen frei, you are at liberty. Die Wahl steht ihm frei, he has a free choice.

Er will ihm wohl, he wishes him well.

Er ist uns überlegen, he is superior to us, &c.

260. Of these some also form *impers. verbs* in connexion with *seyn, werden* or *gehen*, and also require the *Dat.*

Es ist, or wird mir bang or angst, I am, or am getting alarmed, anxious.

Es ist, or wird mir wohl, I am, or am getting well, comfortable.

Es ist, or wird mir schlimm or übel, I am, or am getting unwell, ill, uncomfortable, faint, sick.

Es ist, or wird mir kalt, warm, heiß, I am, or am getting cold, warm, hot.

Es ist, or { wohl } zu Ruthe or
wird ihm { schlimm } zu Sinn,

He is, or { comfortable } in his
is getting { uncomfortable } mind.

Es gieng ihm sonst sehr gut, jetzt aber geht es ihm schlecht, he was formerly very well off, but now he is poor.

261. There are, as will have been noticed, several verbs which are transitive in *Engl.* and intrans. in *Germ.*; such verbs

to the *Dat.*: für ihn (instead of ihm) scheint keine Sonne, for him no sun shines.

admit of the Passive voice in both languages ; but in Germ. the Passive assumes an *impersonal* form, as none but transitive verbs can take this form in all the persons, e. gr.

Man hat i hm geschmeichelt, people have flattered him ; i hm ist geschmeichelt worden, *to him* (he) has been flattered.

262. But there are other verbs intrans. in both languages which do not admit of any Passive in Engl., but may also take the *Impers. Passive* in Germ. e. gr. for :

Jemand liest ihr vor, some one reads to her. Es wird ihr (or Ihr wird) von jemanden vorgelesen, it is to her (or to her is) read by some one.

263. Several verbs and adjs. express the causal relation by *prepositions* :

a) An (with the Dat.)

I. By the verbs :

sich ergehen to delight in	sich rächen to take revenge upon
leiden to suffer	sterben to die ⁴⁶

Er ergötzte sich an unseren Leiden, he delighted in our sufferings.

II. By the following adjectives.

ähnlich similar to	klein little in
arm poor in	krank ill of
gleich equal in	leer void of
groß great in	reich rich

Das Land ist arm an Gelde, the country is poor in money.

III. Haben or finden when connected with the subst. Freude joy, Gefallen pleasure, Lust delight, Schutz protection, Trost comfort.

Ich hatte meine Freude an der Unterhaltung, I had my delight (took delight) in the amusement.

Wir fanden Schutz an unserem Consul, we found a protection in our consul.

⁴⁶ Also the impers., es fehlt, es mangelt, es gebricht, in the sense of to be in want of (See Note 52) ; and es liegt it lies with, as :

Es lag nicht an mir, it lay not with me, i. e. it was not my fault.

b) An (with the Acc.)

anbinden to fasten to	mahnen, erinnern to remind of
denken to think of	(See also Rs. 256, 257 a).
gewöhnen to accustom to	sich weiden to delight in
glauben to believe in	

Sie banden ihn an einen Pfahl an, they tied him to a stake.

c) Auf (with the Dat.)

beruhen to depend on	bestehen to insist upon
Es beruhet auf einem Irrthum, it rests on an error.	

d) Auf (with the Acc.)

ankommen to depend on	verzichten to renounce
trogen to be arrogant	warten to wait for
sich verlassen to rely upon	eifersüchtig jealous
vertrauen to trust to	stolz proud
vertrösten to refer one's hopes to	

Er verläßt sich zu sehr auf seine Stärke und ist zu stolz auf dieselbe, he relies too much upon his strength, and is too proud of it.

e) Aus or in—bestehen to consist of.

f) Bei or in—beharren, bleiben to preserve in.

g) Mit,—the adj. zufrieden content, and the verbs :

anfangen to begin, sich befaßen engage in, sich begnügen, vortlieb nehmen to content oneself with, versehen, versorgen to furnish with.	
---	--

Also by most verbs formed from subst. and adjs. by means of the prefix be; as

bedecken to cover	benühen to trouble
begaben to endow	beseßen to occupy with
belasten to burden	bepflanzen to plant with
belohnen to reward	bereichern to enrich
bekränzen to wreath	bezaubern to enchant

h) Ueber (with the Acc.)

I. The verbs herrschen to rule, schalten and walten to sway

II. sich erbarmen to take pity on	klagen, sich beklagen, to complain of
erstaunen, sich wundern, to be astonished at	lachen to laugh at
	lächeln to smile at
sich freuen, frohlocken to rejoice at	spotten to mock at

spötteln to sneer at	weinen to weep for
trauern to mourn for	zürnen to be angry at

And others expressing an emotion of the mind.

III. By the verbs *nachdenken*, *sagen* or *sprechen*, *urtheilen*, when the meaning is *to dwell upon* the things we think, speak or judge of; otherwise these kind of verbs require *von*; as :

Er sprach lange über den Gegenstand, ohne ein einziges Mal von sich selbst zu sprechen, he spoke a long time *on* the subject, without speaking once *of* himself.

i) *Von* : by the adj. *frei* free, and the following verbs which are, however, also for the most part used with the Gen. :

befreien to deliver from	entwöhnen to wean from
entblößen to deprive of	sich los sagen to renounce from
entfernen to remove from	los sprechen to acquit

Ich habe mich von seiner Gesellschaft losgesagt, I have withdrawn from his society.

Also by the verbs :

denken to think	sprechen, reden, to speak
glauben to believe of	träumen to dream
hören to hear	urtheilen to judge
sagen to say	wissen to know (See h. III.)

k) *Vor* (with the Dat.) by the verbs :

beben to tremble	sich hüten to be on one's guard
bergen to shelter from	
sich eckeln to be disgusted at	sich schämen to be ashamed of
erschrecken to be frightened at	sich scheuen to be abashed
sich entsetzen to be startled at	verbergen to conceal from
fliehen or entfliehen, to fly from	sich verstellen to disguise one-self
sich fürchten to be afraid of	
grauen (impers.) to be horrified at	zittern to tremble at

THE ABLATIVE.

264. The relation called *Ablative* is generally expressed

in Engl. by *from* or *by*, and in Germ. in most instances by *von*, *durch*, or *aus*:

Goliath was slain *by* David, Goliath wurde von David erschlagen.

We got wet *by* the sea-water, wir wurden vom Meerwasser naß.

She killed him *by* (i. e. by means of) poison, Sie tödtete ihn durch Gift.

To overcome *by* generosity, durch Großmuth überwinden.

From respect to his superiors, aus Achtung vor seinen Vorgesetzten, or gegen seine Oberen.

From experience, aus Erfahrung; *from* a book, aus einem Buche.

It was prepared *from* wine, es war aus Wein bereitet (See R. 210, c).

265. Sometimes this relation is marked in English by *with*, and rendered by *vor*.

To die *with* hunger, thirst, cold, heat, fear, hope, joy, sorrow, anxiety, ennui, &c. vor Hunger, Durst, Kälte, Hitze, Furcht, Hoffnung, Freude, Kummer, Angst, Langeweile, u. s. w. sterben.

FACTITIVE RELATION.

266. The *effects* or *purposes* of actions are expressed in some instances in both languages by the Acc., occasionally in the one by this case, and in the other by prepos., but in most instances, in both, by prepositions.

267. Verbs expressing a change, whether effected gradually, or at once, generally take *z u*,⁵⁷ e. gr.

Er wurde⁵⁸ zum Schurken, he became a knave.

⁵⁷ Verwandeln to change, theilen to divide, and a few more require *in* into: Silber *in* Gold verwandeln.

⁵⁸ This verb as well as *seyn* to be, *bleiben* to remain, *scheinen* to seem, *heißen* to be called, *nennen* to call (name), require the Nom.

Er ist und bleibt ein guter Mensch, he is and remains a good man.

Er wird ein General werden, he will become a general.

Die Setze wuchs zu einem Baume, the sapling grew into a tree.

In dieser Schule bildete er sich zum Staatsmanne, in this school he formed himself into a statesman.

3u schüchtern; um Soldaten, too timid for a soldier.

268. Also in phrases as the following :

Wir reisen zum Vergnügen und lesen zum Zeitvertreibe, we travel for pleasure and read for amusement.

Anstalten zur Vertheidigung, preparations for defence. See also Rs. 194, and 210, e) :

Er wurde zum Minister ernannt, he was appointed a minister of state.

Er wollte ihn zum Gelehrten machen, he wanted to make a scholar of him.

269. 3u is also required by several other verbs and by some adjs. e. gr.

Wir rathen ihm zu einem gütlichen Vergleich, aber er wollte es zu einem Rechtshandel bringen, we advised him to (come to) an amicable settlement, but he wanted to bring it to a lawsuit.

Ich ermahne zum Frieden, will sie aber nicht dazu zwingen (or nöthigen), I exhort to (make) peace, but will not compel you to it.

Reif zur Aernte, ripe for the harvest.

Geneigt und bereit zum Handeln, inclined to and ready for action (i. e. to act).

270. Verbs expressing a wish or desire require um, such are :

Bitten, ersuchen to request	buhlen to court
bemühen (sich) to endeavour for	spielen to play
betteln to beg	werben to sue.

Er heist Peter, und scheint ein ehrlicher Mann, he is called Peter, and seems an honest man.

But if *to remain* is followed by *to*, it generally adds the adj. übrig: and requires the Dat. :

Es blieb mir nichts übrig, nothing was left to me.

Sie spielten um Geld, they played *for* money.

271. Verbs like the following require *n a ch*:

forſchen to enquire after	ſeñnen (ſich) to long for
fragen to ask for	ſtreben to strive after
ringen to struggle for	verlangen to long for.

Wer hat *n a ch* mir gefragt? who has asked *for* me?

272. Verbs like the following require *für*:

Ausgeben to pass for	gelten to be taken for
erkennen to acknowledge	halten to take for
erklären to declare.	

Man erklärte ihn *für* unſchuldig, he was declared innocent.²⁹

273. The verbs *anſehen* to regard, *darſtellen*, to represent, *erkennen* to discover also sometimes indicate the relation of effect by the conj. *a l s*:

Ich erkannte ihn als meinen Wohlthäter, I discovered him to be my benefactor.

. For farther information on the use of the prepos. see Appendix to the Exercises.

274. Verbs governing prepositions cannot, as in Engl. employ the Part. Pres. or Inf. as a supine after them, but are turned, as will be seen in the following phrases:

I know *of his being* (or that he is) right, ich weiß es, daß er recht hat.

Do you doubt *of his being* wrong? Zweifelst Sie daran, daß er Unrecht hat?

I rely *on your answering* me, ich verlasse mich darauf, daß Sie mir antworten.

I longed *to hear* her, ich sehnte mich *da n a ch*, sie zu hören.

It may contribute *to maintain* them, es mag dazu dienen, sie zu ernähren.

ADVERBIAL RELATIONS.

275. Substs. used adverbially (R. 185) are put in the Gen.

²⁹ Für is mostly required for the Engl. prep. *for*, when it means *instead* or *to the advantage of*, the French *pour*: do it *for* me, thun Sie es *für* mich.

(Note 50), or Acc. (R. 251, c.) ; but most frequently indicate their relation to the verb by means of prepos. such as *an, auf, in, zu, mit* &c. (see *Mit Geduld* and the following, examples to R. 201, and Rs. 264 & 265).

FORMATION OF COMPOUND SENTENCES.

276. Sentences, connected together by means of relative pronouns, conjunctions, or adverbs, are called compound. In every comp. sent. one part is principal, and one, or more, subordinate or accessory. The latter may be of the nature of a *substantive, an adjective or adverb*.

Substantive accessory sentences.

277. They are so called, because they stand in lieu of subst.; as for, My going displeases you, *mein Gehen mißfällt Ihnen*, we may say : you are displeased that I am going, *daß ich gehe mißfällt Ihnen*. These sentences are usually connected with the principal ones by means of the conj. *daß*, or by *damit* or *auf daß*, *in order that* :

Ich bin (davon) überzeugt, daß man sich irrt, I am convinced *that* people are mistaken (see also the exampl. of Rs. 227, 232).

Ich warne Sie noch einmal, damit Sie nicht in die Schlinge fallen, I warn you again, *in order that* you may not fall into the snare.

278 Subst. sentences *with relat. Pronouns* :

Wer mir wohl will, (der) wird mir nicht so begegnen, he who wishes me well, will not treat me in this manner (see R. 121).

Ich thue (das), was ich soll, I do that what is my duty.

Den liebt niemand, der niemanden liebt, no one loves him who loves no one.

Denke an das, was ich dir sage, think of what I tell thee.

279. *Adverbial* subst. Sentences :

Wo und wie er lebt, weiß niemand, *where* and *how* he lives, no one knows.

Ob es so ist oder nicht, muß sich bald zeigen, whether it be so or not, must soon show itself.

Adjective accessory sentences.

280. These sentences are formed by means of relat. pronouns, and take the place of adjs. as for a learned man we may say : a man *who possesses much book-knowledge*.

Die Nachrichten, welche Sie mir gebracht haben, the news⁶⁰ you have brought me.

Solche Fische, welche keine Schuppen haben, such fish *as* (for *which*) have no scales.

Er war ein Freund des Bischofs, was mir ganz unbekannt war, he was a friend to the bishop, *which* was quite unknown to me.

Er soll ein Schiffskapitain gewesen seyn, wonach er ganz aussieht, he is said to have been a naval captain, *which* he has quite the look of.⁶¹

281. In Engl. the adj. sentence is frequently abridged, as :

A storm, accompanied by hail, destroyed the harvest, ein Sturm von Hagel begleitet, zerstörte die Aernte.

282. More generally however, the adj. or participle, thus used without the relat. pron., is, in Germ., placed before the subst., *declined*, and *preceded* by all the words governed by it; e. gr.

Ein von Hagel begleitet-er Sturm, a by hail accompanied storm.

Ein mit vielen, fast unüberwindlichen Schwierigkeiten umgeben-es Unternehmen, instead of ein U. umgeben mit fast unüberwindlichen Schw., or ein U., welches mit fast unüberwindlichen Schw. umgeben war (or ist), an enterprise surrounded by many, almost insuperable difficulties (see example 6., to R. 293)

⁶⁰ The relat. pron. before a Nom. is never suppressed in Germ.

⁶¹ It is contrary to the genius of the Germ. language thus to separate a preposition from the case it governs, and place it at the end of a sentence.

Adverbial accessory sentences.

283. These sentences are formed by means of relative conjunctions, prefixed to the accessory sentence, while the principal sentence, *when it follows the accessory*, usually commences with the demonstrative *so, so, then*; e. gr. Da ich das Geheimniß nicht weiß, so kann ich's auch nicht verrathen, as I do not know the secret, I can also not betray it.

284. *Adverbial accessory sentences of place and time.*

Wo, wohin, *where, whither, &c.*

Es geschah nicht (da), wo man es erwartet, und wohin alles sich begeben, hatte, it did not happen (there) where it had been expected, and whither every one had gone.

Als *when or while, relating to a definite event*:

Als er mir begegnete, war es schon dunkel, *when* he met me, it was already dark.

Wenn (for wann) *when, whenever*:

Wenn ich ihm begegne, ist es immer Nacht, *when* I meet him, it is always in the night time.

Indem, wie, *as, while*:

Indem wir reden, verrinnt die Zeit, *while* we are speaking, the time elapses.

Wie ich mich umsehe, steht er vor mir, as I was looking round, he stood before me, (R. 224, e.)

Indeß, indessen, während, *whilst, in the meanwhile*:

Indessen kommt er wohl wieder, *meanwhile* he will probably return, (R. 224, d).

bleiben Sie hier, während ich mich anziehe, stay here, *while* I am dressing myself, (R. 159).

Nachdem after, ehe before, bis until, till and seit, seitdem since, are used pretty nearly as in Engl.

285. *Adverbial access. sentences of cause and condition.*

Da (occasionally indem) *as, since*:

Da Sie mir nicht trauen, will ich Ihnen einen Bürgen stellen, *as* you do not trust me, I will give you a guarantee.

Da ich mich nicht entfernen darf, so will ich Ihnen den Vorgang jetzt erzählen, *not being allowed to go away*, I will relate to you the occurrence now.

Ich gab ihm die Briefschäften, indem ich wußte, daß sie ihm gehörten, I gave him the documents, knowing that they belonged to him, (see R. 243).

Weil, *because*, as in Engl.

Wenn *if*, as in Engl. (See R. 301).

286. *Adverbial accessory sentences of Manner.*

Indem, *whilst* (see R. 243):

Er kam vorwärts, indem er sich bis zur Erde bückte, *he came forward, bowing to the ground.*

So, *so as*:

Sie verführten so, daß sie sich die Liebe aller Gutgesinnten erwerben, *they acted so as to acquire the affection of all well-intentioned people.**

Sowie *such as*; als ob, *as if*, used as in Engl.

287. *Adverbial accessory sentences of Intensity.*

So... daß *so that* or *so as*:

Der Caffee ist so stark, daß man ihn nicht trinken kann, *the coffee is so strong, that one cannot drink it.*

Er spricht so leise, daß man ihn nicht hört, *he speaks so low, as not to be heard.*

So... als *as*... *as* (see R. 91):

Sobald als, so oft als, so lange als, *as soon as, as often as, as long as*, are employed the same as in Engl., except that *als* is often omitted.

So oft (als) ich ihn sehe, *as often as I see him.*

Als than, (see R. 91).

Je... je or je... desto (see R. 92).

* Notice in this and in the second example of the next rule, the difference of idiom, with regard to the Inf.

Als *baß*, *as to*, occasionally used for the Inf.:

Sie sind zu streng, *als* *baß* sie einem so etwas erlauben sollten, they are too rigid, *as to* permit any one (to do) such a thing; which might also be turned into:

Sie sind zu streng, um einem so etwas zu erlauben.

288. *Concessive adverbial accessory Sentences.*

Ob schon, obwohl, obgleich, wenn schon, wenn auch, wenn gleich, although.

Ob schon die Prophezeiung nicht eingetroffen ist, *altho'* the prophesy has not been fulfilled.

NB.—These conjunctions are frequently separated by the Nom. and other words of the sentence:

Wenn wir es auch gewollt hätten, so gab es doch keine Gelegenheit dazu, *though* we should have been inclined to it, there was no opportunity for it.

Wer auch *whoever*, was auch *whatever*, wie auch *however*, are also separated.

Wer er auch sey, was er auch sage, und wie er sich auch anstelle, so soll er mich nicht zu anderen Gesinnungen bringen, *whoever* he be, *whatever* he may say, and *however* he may behave, he shall not make me change my mind.

Wie is often used without auch, in the sense of *however*.

CONSTRUCTION.

CONNEXION OF SUBSTANTIVES AND ADJECTIVES.

289. The position of substs. with regard to each other is the same as in Engl. (see Rs. 209 to 215):

290. The position of predicative adjs. with regard to substs. is also the same in both languages; except that German poets sometimes take the licence to place the adj. *after* it, as: das Haus, das neue, the new house.

P O S I T I O N O F W O R D S I N S E N T E N C E S.

291. Sentences are of two kinds, viz. : *principal*, and *accessory or subordinate* (see R. 276).

292. The principal sentences are formed either in *direct* or *indirect* order.

P R I N C I P A L S E N T E N C E S.

Direct order.

293. In this arrangement, the place of the Nom. or subject, (whether simple, or complex) with regard to the verb is the same in both languages, as :

1. *Assertory*: Ich bin I am, ich bin nicht I am not.

2. *Interrog.*: Bin ich? am I? bin ich nicht? am I not?

3. *Assertory*: Der Knabe liest, aber das Mädchen liest nicht, the boy reads, but the girl does not.

4. *Interrog.*: Liest der Knabe? does the boy read? (see Rs. 160 and 161).

Liest das Mädchen nicht? does the girl not read?

5. *Assert.*: Der Vater, aufgebracht über die Widerspänstigkeit seines
The father enraged at the obstinacy of his
verschwenckerischen Sohnes, den er so oft zu enterben gedroht
prodigal son whom he so often to disinherit threatened
hatte, hielt endlich Wort.
had, kept at last (his) word.

6. *Interr.*: Hält der über die Widerspänstigkeit seines verschwen-
Kept the at the obstinacy of his prodigal
ckerischen Sohnes, den er so oft zu enterben gedroht hatte,
son whom he so often to disinherit threatened had
aufgebracht= Vater endlich Wort?
enraged (see R. 282) father at last (his) word?

294. The *predicate*, which may be either an adjective, a participle, an infinitive, or an adverb of quality or manner, is placed entirely at the end of the sentence, but in this order :

a) If the adj. occurs by itself, it goes last, as :

1. Seine Vorschläge sind, meiner Meinung nach, (see R. 191) gut.
His proposals are, according to my opinion, good.

2. Gehorsam ist einem guten Kinde leicht.
Obedience is to a good child easy.

b) It is the same if a Part. or Inf. occurs by itself:

1. Er ist schon vor⁶³ ein Paar Tagen da gewesen.
He has already before⁶³ a few days there been.
2. Sie wird in kurzem dort seyn.
She will in short (i. e. shortly) there be.

c) But if a Part. or Inf. occurs with an adj., or an Inf. with a Part., the Part. or Inf. goes after the adj., and the Inf. after the Part.:

1. Der Gehorsam ist dem Kinde leicht gewesen.
2. Der Gehorsam wird dem Kinde leicht seyn.
3. Der Gehorsam wird dem Kinde leicht gewesen seyn

d) If two Infs. occur, the governing one goes last:

Ich werde bald hingehen müssen.
I shall soon there go must (be obliged to go there).

e) With adverbs:

1. Der Knabe lieft sehr gut.—2. Er hat sehr gut gelesen.
3. Er wird sehr gut lesen.
4. Er würde sehr gut gelesen haben, (see also R. 178).

295. The cases and prepositions required by the verb, the subst., adj. and adverbial sentences, as well as the adverbs referring to it, are placed *after* the verb, and *before* the predicates, in such a manner that, usually, the *Acc.* is placed last, the *Dat.*, *adverbs* &c. preceding it.⁶⁴

⁶³ Ein Paar, signifying *a few* often remains undeclined, altho' preceded by a prepos.

⁶³ Vor placed before substs. of time signifies *ago*, e. gr. a few days ago.

⁶⁴ The general principle in the arrangement of words is, to place the *defining* word before the defined, and the less important before the more important, as it were in an ascending scale, which is also followed by the tonic accent, as may be seen by the examples, and in the following:

Diese seine drei noch ganz neuen und schönen Häuser sind in dem
These his three yet quite new and beautiful houses have in the

1. Ich schreibe ihm,
I write to him.
2. Ich schreibe ihm einen Brief.
I write to him a letter.
3. Ich habe ihm einen Brief geschrieben.
I have to him a letter written,
4. Ich werde ihm einen Brief schreiben.
I shall to him a letter write.
5. Er hat in der Stadt einen Feind angetroffen.
He has in the town an enemy met.
6. Er erzählte mir diesen Morgen den Vorfall.
He related to me this morning the occurrence.
7. Er trinkt aus Geiz keinen Wein.
He drinks from avarice no wine.
8. Er kaufte sich zum Vergnügen ein Pferd.
He bought to himself for pleasure a horse.
9. Sie spielten gestern zum Zeitvertreib Schach.
They played yesterday for amusement (at) chess.
10. Sie schenkte mir aus Freundschaft diesen Ring.
She presented to me from friendship this ring.

296. If however the Acc. is a pron., especially a reflective pron., it precedes the Dat., adverbs &c.

1. Wir schickten ihn ihm in's Haus.
We sent it to him into the house.
2. Ich freue mich seiner Ankunft.
I rejoice myself of (at) his arrival, (see Rs. 168 & 256.)

297. If the sentence includes a Gen., the Acc. always precedes this case :

1. Man hat den Mann eines Verbrechens beschuldigt.
One has the man of a crime accused.

298. Generally speaking, *relations of time* are placed before those of *cause*, as may be seen in example 9 in the above

letzten so verheerenden Kriege von dem alles zerstörenden Feinde rein
last so destructive war by the all destroying enemy en-
ausgeplündert worden.
tirely plundered out been.

rule ; and *objective* or *causal* relations, indicated by prepositions, usually go after the cases of the verb :

Ich gab ihm Hoffnung auf eine Erbschaft.

I gave to-him hope upon (to) an inheritance.

Sehen Sie heute noch zu ihm.

Go they (you) to-day yet to him.

Es ist ihm von ihnen gesagt worden.

It has to-him by them said been.

299. The adverbs of *manner* (including *negations*), and occasionally advs. of *time*, are placed as stated in R. 295, if they are to modify the whole sentence ; but if they relate to any particular word of it, they are placed immediately before that word.⁶⁴

1. Sie haben ungewöhnlich lange geschlafen.

They have uncommonly long slept.

2. Sie werden bald nach zehn Uhr hier seyn.

They will soon after ten o'clock here be.

3. Ich muß sie noch heute (or heute noch) sehen.

I must them yet to-day (or to-day yet) see.

4. Ich drückte dem Manne freundlich die Hand, und

I pressed to-the man friendly the hand, and

er drückte mich weinend an's Herz.

he pressed me weeping to the (his) heart.

5. Ich war auch da. 6. Auch ich war da.

I was also there. Also I was there.

7. Ich hätte zwar (freilich) gehen sollen.

I had indeed (certainly) go should (Note 44 & R. 241).

8. Er hat auf mein Anrathen gestern eine Reise

He has on my advice yesterday a journey

unternommen.

undertaken.

9. Or, er hat gestern auf mein Anrathen, &c.

10. Sie haben beständig des Sonntags Gesellschaft.

They have constantly on Sundays company.

11. Or, des Sonntags beständig Gesellschaft.

⁶⁴ Adverbs can never, as in Engl. be placed between the Nom. and the finite verb, unless in accessory sentences, (see R. 305).

12. Er hat meinen Bruder nicht begrüßt.
He has my brother not greeted.
13. Or nicht meinen Bruder begrüßt.
14. Sie tanzt nicht oft gut, or, oft nicht gut.
She dances not often well, or, often not well.
15. Ich habe nicht Ihren Nachbar besuchen wollen,
I have not your neighbour to-visit wished,
sondern Sie.
but you.
16. Ich besuche Sie heute.
I visit you to-day.
17. Ich besuche heute Sie, und morgen ihn.
I visit to-day you, and to-morrow him.

PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

Indirect order.

300. The German language, like the Engl., frequently inverts the sentences, for the sake of emphasis or euphony, by placing any of the parts of speech dependent on the verb, at the head of the phrase; but the Germ. then *invariably requires the Nom. to be placed after the verb**.

Examples:

a) Commencing with a predicate.

Gut sind die Vorschläge zwar, aber nicht leicht aus-
Good are the proposals indeed, but not easy to
zuführen.
execute.

1. Gesehen habe ich ihn nicht, aber gehört wohl.
Seen have I him not, but heard indeed (I have).
2. Wissen können Sie es nicht, aber vielleicht errathen.
Know can you it not, but perhaps guess.

b) Commencing with the Dat., the Acc. or an objective sentence, or with the Gen.

* This is also occasionally done in Engl., especially after quotations and adverbs, e. gr. I understand, said *he*, what you mean. Scarcely had I left the room.

1. Ihm haben wir nicht geschrieben.
To-him have we not written.
2. Einen Brief wollen Sie ihm schreiben?
A letter will you to-him write?
3. Gehe nicht so langsam! rief die Mutter.
Walk not so slowly! exclaimed the mother.
4. Eines Verbrechens wurde er beschuldigt.
Of a crime was he accused.

c) Commencing with an adverb, or adverbial relation.

1. Auf eine Erbschaft gab ich ihm Hoffnung.
To an inheritance gave I him hope.
2. In's Haus schickten wir ihn ihm.
Into the house sent we him to-him.
3. Von Ihnen ist es ihm gesagt worden.
By you has it to-him said been.
4. Freundlich drückte mir⁶⁶ der Mann die Hand.
Friendly pressed to-me the man the hand.
5. Damit Sie nicht in die Schlinge fallen, warne ich
Sie noch einmal, (see examples to Rs. 277 and 295 to 299).
301. The Nom. is also placed after the verb, when *wenn* *if*,
is to be understood (see Note 43).

302. It is also placed after, in exclamatory sentences, and then generally connected with *doch*:

Habe ich doch den Markt nie so einsam gesehen!
Have I though the market never so solitary seen!
Wöge (doch) nie der Tag erscheinen!
May (though) never the day appear!

303. Frequently a sentence is commenced by *es* for the sake of emphasis, especially in optative sentences, when the Nom. is also placed after the verb:

Es war nichts anderes zu erwarten.
There was nothing else to expect.

Es thue jeder seine Pflicht.
It do each (let every one do) his duty.

⁶⁶ If the Nom., thrown after the verb, consists of a subst., and comes in contact with a Dat. or Acc. being a pron., this pron. is placed between the verb and the Nom., as in this instance.

Es lebe der König !

It live the king (may the king live, *vivat rex*) !

ACCESSORY SENTENCES.

304. These sentences, (the nature and formation of which have been explained in Rs. 276 to 288), whether standing before or after the principal sentence, place their words in the same order as the direct principal sentences, except the **FINITE VERB**, *which is removed entirely to the end*.

Ich wiederhole es, damit Sie es nicht wieder vergessen;
I repeat it, in order that you it not again forget,
da Sie es schon einmal vergessen haben.
as you it already once forgotten have.

Or damit Sie es nicht wieder vergessen, wiederhole ich es*.

305. The words which have this moving power, and by which the accessory sentences are connected with the principal ones, are, besides the *relative prons.*, the following *relat.* (or adversative) *conj.*⁶⁷ and *adverbs* (see Rs. 278 &c.) :

als as, when	nachdem after, since
also, denn, dann consequently	ob whether, ob auch altho', and
auf daß, damit in order that	others with ob
bevor before	seit, seitdem as, since
bis till, until	so if, so wie as
da (nun) since	so bald as soon as, and others
dafern, Falls, (im Fall) in case	with so
daher thence, daß that	ungeachtet notwithstanding
ehe before	während whilst, wann when
gleichwie as, like	weil because, since, as
indem whilst	wenn if
indessen meanwhile	wo where, wodurch whence, and
je. . desto (see R. 92).	others with wo. ⁶⁸

* See the examples to the above mentioned rules.

⁶⁷ The co-ordinative conj. such as aber, allein, sondern, but auch in addition to, denn for, sowohl als as well as, ingleichen, desgleichen likewise, nämlich namely, nicht allein not only, weder. . noch neither. . nor, &c., have no influence on the position of words.

⁶⁸ Care must be taken not to confound *wer*, *welcher*, *was*, *wenn*, *wo*,

306. It is nearly optional, when a principal sentence is followed by an accessory one, whether to move the predicate of the former after this accessory sentence or not :

Ich finde den Wein, welchen Sie mir gebracht haben, sehr gut.

I find the wine which you to me brought have very good.

Or : Ich finde den Wein sehr gut, welchen Sie mir geb. hab.

Ich nehme den Fall an, daß Sie Recht haben,

I assume the case, that you right have (are).

Or : Daß Sie Recht haben an.

Sie wird die Freude, ihn zu lesen, haben.

She will the pleasure it to read have.

Or : die Freude haben, ihn zu lesen.

307. It is also optional, when one accessory sentence is followed by another, whether to move the verb after the latter or not ; as :

Ich zweifle, ob er seine Verwandten mehr, als ich, liebe.

I doubt, whether he his relations more than I, loves.

Or : mehr liebe, als ich.

308. If an accessory sentence includes two infinitives, the auxiliary verb is placed immediately *before* them.

Da ich ihn hab e lesen hören, (see R. 241).

Wenn ich ihn w er d e schreiben sehen.

309. Accessory sentences in the Fut. Pass., also generally place the auxiliary before the Part. and Inf. (see R. 166).

Da ich von ihnen w er d e getadelt werden.

As I by them shall blamed be.

MISCELLANEOUS RULES.

310. The intransit. verbs of motion, such as *gehen*, *kommen*,

woher, &c. used as *interrogative* prons. or adverbs, and of course, in principal sentences, with the same words employed as relatives ; since in the former case, instead of removing the verb, they require it to stand as in Engl.

Wer hat es ihm gesagt? Wo wohnen sie jetzt?

Who has it to-him said? Where live they now?

&c., also *schicken* to send, require *zu* with reference to persons, and *an* *den* with regard to places :

Gehen Sie (schicken Sie) zu ihm, go (send) to him.

Kommen Sie nach Hause, nach der Stadt, come home, to town.

Er reiste nach Spanien, he travelled to Spain.

311. *Schreiben* to write, *richten*, *adressiren* to direct, address, and a few similar verbs, require *an* :

An wen war es gerichtet? To whom was it addressed?

312. *Der Gleiche* the equal, is always in the Gen. when joined to a poss. pron.

Halte dich an deines Gleichen, keep to your equals.

313. *In the middle*, or *midst of* is expressed by *mitten auf*, *in*, *unter*.

Mitten auf dem Felde und mitten unter den Feinden, in the middle of the field and in the midst of the enemies.

Mitten in dem Garten, in the middle of the garden.

314. *Erst*, *eben*, *noch* are used adverbially for *just*, *but*,

Ich sah ihn erst gestern, I saw him but yesterday.

Er war eben erst angekommen, he was but just arrived.

Er kam nur eben noch für einen Augenblick, he came but just for a moment. *Erst gestern* but yesterday *Noch heute* yet this very day. *Noch nicht* not yet.

315. *Schon* already, is often used in the manner of a pleonasm. *Schon jetzt* even now. *Schon oft* often. *Schon spät* late :

Er ist schon lange hier. He has been long here, (R. 224, b).

316. *Nicht* is often found in Germ. as a pleonasm :

Es ist mehr als ein Monat, seitdem er nicht geschrieben hat, it is more than a month since he has (not) written.

Wie oft habe ich's Ihnen nicht erzählt! How often have I (not) related it to you!

317. *Lang* long, when placed after a subst. signifies *during*.

Ein Jahr lang, during a year, a whole year.

318. *Mer* but, may be placed either at the beginning of a sentence, or after several other words, without either influencing the position or sense of any part of it.

319. After a negation, *BUT* is generally rendered by *sondern*.

DICTIONARY

OF THE

PRINCIPAL PREFIXES AND AFFIXES

FOUND IN THE GERMAN LANGUAGE IN POLYSYLLABIC WORDS.

Few languages contain so great a number of compound and derivative words, as the German; and almost every writer increases them by new combinations, either for the purpose of expelling some foreign words from the language, or of conveying some new shade of meaning, for which any existing terms may be insufficient. A foreigner, therefore, in studying this language, should pay almost as much attention to the rules which regulate this process of combination, as to the grammar itself. As those, however, which concern the joining of words are very complicated, and require an extensive knowledge of the genius of the language, the learner will do best to postpone their study, till he can read a theoretical grammar written in German; and for practical purposes, it will be sufficient, if he learns to throw out the connecting letters, *ß, es, er, n, en*, with the view of looking for those words singly, which his dictionary may not contain in their compound form. But as a knowledge of the prefixes and affixes does not require so intimate an acquaintance with the language, the following list has been constructed, as an introduction to a more profound study of the principles of derivation which rule this language. I have added the terminations of foreign words, partly to prevent their being mistaken for affixes, and partly with a view to make the list answer the secondary purpose of offering, in alphabetical order, the terminations of nearly all polysyllabic substs., with regard to their genders and declensions.

Strictly speaking, prepos. adjs. and adverbs cannot be termed prefixes; yet as many are used as such, their introduction will be found

of service. But with a view of distinguishing them, their definition has been printed in capitals, while those of the prefixes &c., are printed in italics. Let it be remembered that all prefixes, whatever their nature, separable in verbs, are inseparable in substs. or adjectives derived from such verbs; as *die Abschrift* the copy, from *abschreiben* to copy, a separable compound verb.

A b, *pref. separ.*, signifying off, away, (Lat. *de, ex, ab,*) implies removal, or liberation: *abreisen* to depart, *die Abreise* departure, *abnehmen* to take off, *die Abnahme* taking off, decrease, (See R. 178). Sometimes it takes the inseparable prefix. *ver* before it, but without thereby extending its meaning: *verabscheuen* to abhor, *der Abscheu* horror, *abscheulich* horrible, (see R. 176.)

A b e r, *pref.* found only in *Aberglaube*, prejudice, and its derivatives; *Aberwitz* madness, and *aberwischig* mad. It seems to stand for *after* in the sense of false, not for the conj. *aber* but.

A f t e r, *pref. inseparable*, signifying :

1. After, (*post, retro*) *Aftergeburt* afterbirth, *afterreden* to backbite, to speak behind a person, (see R. 177).

2. False: *Afterkönig* pretended, *pseudo* king.

A c t, *term.* of substs. fr. the Lat. in *actus*, Masc. 11.

A l, ————— *ale* or *alis*.

Those expressing titles and other male appellations, are Masc. the others are Neut., but both of Decl. II.

A l l, *ADJ.* all, (Lat. *omnis*) used as a *prefix* in words like *Allmacht* omnipotence, &c.

A m m, *term.* of substs. fr. the Greek in *amma*, Neut. II.

A n, *PREPOS.* used as a *separable prefix* to verbs, and implies approach or attachment (near, at, close to; the Lat. *ad*.) as: *annähren* to approach, *die Annäherung* approach, *annehmen* to accept, *Annahme* acceptance, *angenehm* agreeable, (see R. 178.)

It is sometimes placed before *er*, and inseparable. (see R. 182.)

— *term.* of Lat. substs. in *anus*, Masc. Decl. II. Some male appellatives have been changed from *anus* into *aner* and are of Decl. I.

A n t, *pref. inseparable*, found only in the words *das Antlitz* countenance, and *die Antwort* answer and *antworten* to answer, (see R. 177). Also compounded with *ver* and *über* (inseparable) in *sich verantworten* to defend oneself and *überantworten* to deliver over, (see R. 176).

— *term.* of substs. from the Lat. in *ans*, Gen. *antis*, Masc. II.

A n ß, *term.* of substs. fr. the Lat. in *antia*, Fem. VI.

Ar, *pref. insep.* related to *ur*, of very rare occurrence: *die Arbeit la bour*, VI.

— *term.* of subst. fr. the Lat. in *ar, are, aris, arius* and *arium*, (R. 33, a).

Arch, ——— Greek in *archa*, Masc. VI.

Ar or air, ——— French, Masc. II.

Artig, ADJ. and ADV. derived from *Art* kind, synonymous with *icht*, as *thonartig*, of the clay kind, clayey.

Ast, *term.* of subst. fr. the Greek in *astes*, Masc. VI.

At or at h, Germ. *affix* found in a few subst. Fem. VI.

At, *term.* of subst. fr. the Lat. in *ates, atum, atus*, (See R. 33, a) Fem. VI.

At, ——— *as*, Gen. *atis*.

Auf, PREPOS. used like *an*, and signifies:

1. A tendency downwards, on, upon, as: *Auslegen* to lay upon, *Auflage* impost.

2. A tendency upwards: *aufstehen* to rise, *Aufstand* rising.

3. For open open: *Machen Sie die Thüre auf*, open the door, (see R. 178.)

Auf is also joined to *er* and *insep.* (see R. 182).

Aus, PREPOS. employed like the preceding one, and signifying:

1. To remove, or be outside, out, (Lat. *ex, de*). *Auswerfen* to cast out, *der Auswurf* outcast.

2. To bring to a termination: *ein Gemälde ausmalen*, to finish painting a picture.

Außer, PREPOS. out of, besides (Lat. *extra*), used inseparably with adjs. and adverbs: *außerordentlich* extraordinary.

Bar, *affix*, probably from the obsolete verb *baren*, to bear, or produce; is joined to roots of verbs and to subst., and forms adverbs, and adjs. With the addition of *en*, it forms verbs: *offenbaren* to reveal; and with that of *teit*, subst.: *Ehrbarkeit* propriety. Sometimes it is translated by *able*, or *ably*: *ehrbar* honourable, sometimes by *full*: *danfbar* grateful; and has, in general, the meaning of capability, worthiness, abounding with.

Be, *pref. insep.* (see R. 175), expresses:

1. Proximity: *berufen* to call together.

2. An extension of an action over an object, (upon,) by which means neut. verbs are often made active, and a sense wherein it is also used in a few English verbs: *berauben* to deprive (bereave), from *rauben* to steal, *beschmieren* to besmear, from *schmieren* to smear.

3. To be, or bring, upon : *bewohnen* to inhabit, *befruchten* to fructify.

4. To effect by means of a thing or quality : *beseelen* to animate, *befreien* to liberate.

5. In common conversation, to express vexation at some offensive term : *Ich will dich bejunkern*, I will squire you, i. e. I will teach you to call me (or yourself) squire.

In a few verbs the *e* of *be* has been dropped ; as in *bleichen* to bleach, *bleiben* to remain, *hängen* to be apprehensive.

Bei, Bey, PREPOS. probably derived from *be*, and signifying by, near ; Lat. *proximus*, used as a separable prefix : *beistehen* to assist, *der Beistand* assistance, (see R. 178).

Chen, *affix* forming diminutive substs. (see R. 15).

Dor De, *term.* of substs. formed from verbs, as *Jagd* chase, from *jagen* to chase, *Freude* joy, fr. *sich freuen* to rejoice. Those in *d* are monosyllables and mostly Fem., those in *de*, dissyllables Fem. and of Decl. V. *D*, joined to Infs. also forms the Part. Pres.

Dar, ADV. there, joined as a *sep. pref.* to verbs : *darreichen* to present, (see R. 178).

Durch, PREP. signif. through, used as a *pref. sep.* and *insep.* (see R. 180).

E, *affix*, which stands :

1. As the Dat. sing. of many substs. masc. and neut., (see R. 48).

2. As the plur. of the 2nd decl., (see Rs. 33 and 34.)

3. As the sign of several cases in the decl. of adjs. and prons., (see Rs. 67 and 68).

4. As that of several persons of the verb, (see R. 154).

5. As a euphonous addition to many monosyllabic substs. chiefly of the fem. gender, (see R. 12.)

6. As a termin. joined to collectives beginning with *ge*, and closing with *b*, *d*, *g*, *s*, (see Note 3, p. 14).

7. As a final of abstract and concrete nouns, formed from adjs. : *das Große* the grand, *die GröÙe* the grandeur, *das Säuerē* the acidity, *die Säuerē* the acid. (see R. 93, 3).

8. As a corruption of the Lat. termin. *a*, *is*, &c., *die Classe* class, *Narcisse* narcissus, *Latve* mask, fr. *Latva*.

9. As a term. of words taken from the French : *Epicane*, *Assemblée*.

Ei or Ey, *affix*, joined to substs. (frequently to such as end in *er*), and evidently of foreign origin, (probably from the Lat. *ia*), par-

ticularly as the accent falls upon it, which is never the case with real German terminations. It corresponds with the Engl. term. *y*: *Abtei* abbey, *Gerberei* tannery, *Schneiderei* slattery, particularly in words derived from the Lat. in *ia*, or the trench in *ie*, (which however now more generally end in *ie*). *Tyranneri* tyranny. Frequently it is translated by the term. *ing*: *Mahlerei* painting, *Gärtneri* gardening, Fem. VI.

Ein, *pref. sep.* used for in, generally in the sense of into (see in).

Et, *term.* of substs. from the Greek in *eka*: *Bibliothek* library, Fem. VI.

El, *affix*, expressing:

1. A diminutive, (see R. 15).

2. In many words in general use, imparting an idea of smallness, *Fügel* hill, from *hoch* high, (or the old German *hock*, mountain).

3. Agency instead of *er*, (which see).

In adjs. and adverbs, its meaning is not distinguishable, and in many words it is not of German origin, being a substitute for the Lat. terminations, *ela*, *ula*, *elus*, *elum*, &c.; also for that of *lum*: *Tempel* temple, from *templum*. The Masc. and Neut. are of Decl. I; the Fem. of Decl. V.

Elchen, (see R. 15).

Ell, *term.* of substs. from the Lat. in *ellum*: *das Castell* castle, Neut. II.

Ein, *affix*, of verbs, to which it frequently imparts a diminutive sense: *lächeln* to smile, from *lachen* to laugh. It also signifies pretension or imitation: *andächeln* to play the devotee; and lastly repetition, in the same sense as *etn*: *betteln* to beg, to ask repeatedly, from *bitten* to request.

Em or **Er**, *term.* of the Dat. Masc. and Neut. of the declensions of adjs. and prons. (R. 67).

— *term.* of words from the Greek in *ema*, *System*, Neut. II.

Emp, *pref. insep.* related to *ant* and *ent* and only found in *empfangen* to receive, *empfehlen* to recommend, *empfinden* to feel, and their derivatives, (see R. 175).

En or **Er**, *affix*, forming:

1. The endings of a variety of substs. and adjs., without a distinguishable meaning.

2. The inflections of various cases, as well as the plural of many substs. (see table of declensions, p. 33).

3. The inflections of several cases of adjs. and prons. (See tables 67 and 68).

4. The terminations of the infinitives* of all verbs, and of the Part. Past of nearly all irreg. verbs, (see Obs. 1, p. 63, and R. 162).

5. The term. of adjs.† formed from subst. expressing material substances, as *hölzen hempen*, fr. *Holz*, *eichen oaken*, fr. *Eiche*.
En, term. of plural subst., from the Lat. in *e* : *Exequien*, from *exequia*.
Ent, pref. insep. probably derived with *ant*, from *an*, *in* or *ein* (Lat. *contra, versus, anti, inde*) ; it indicates :

1. Commencement or origin, *entbrennen* to kindle, *entstehen* to arise from, *entlaufen* to run away.

2. Privation for *un* : *entsiegeln* to unseal, (see R. 175).

— term. of Lat. subst. ending in *ens*, Gen. *entis*, Masc. VI, and in *entum*. Neut. II.

Entgegen, PREPOS. joined as a *separ. pref.* to verbs of motion, and signifies towards, or contrary : *entgegengehen* to go to meet, *entgegenhandeln* to act in opposition to (R. 178).

En, term. of Lat. subst. in *entia*, Fem. VI.

Er, pref. insep. (see R. 175), signifying :

1. Elevating, up : *erheben* (for *aufheben*) to raise up, *Erhebung* elevation.

2. Opening, displaying, extending or continuing : *erbrechen* (for *aufbrechen*) to break open, *erzählen* to narrate, *ergießen* to pour forth, *ertragen* to endure.

3. Effecting : *erbitten* to obtain by asking, *erfinden* (for *aussfinden*) to find out, invent, *ermuntern* to make or become cheerful, *erschöpfen* (for *ausschöpfen*) to exhaust, *erschlagen* to slay (put to death by striking).

In many verbs and their derivatives, of which the root has either grown obsolete, or has changed its original signification, the meaning of this prefix is not clear ; an observation which is also applicable to other inseparable prefixes.

— affix, used :

1. As the plur. of subst. of Decl. III, (see R. 35).

2. In the inflection of adjs. articles and prons., (see R. 67).

3. As the sign of the comparative of adjs. & advs. (see Rs. 83 & 184).

4. To express the agency of a man, (as *Gärtner* gardener),

* The active power of *en* is very strikingly visible in the formation of verbs from subst. and adjs., and as such not quite lost in English ; e. gr. *schwärzen* to blacken, from *schwarz* black ; *töbten* to deaden, kill, from *tödt* dead

† Subst. ending in *m* or *n* take *ern*, as *steinern* of stone, from *Stein*.

into which it is often turned by the change of *n* of the Inf. into *r* ; as *Schneider* tailor, fr. *schneiden* to cut, Decl. I.

5. To point out a man as belonging to a town or country : ein *Londoner*, ein *Engländer* an Englishman, Decl. I.

6. To point out a man as being of a certain age or condition : ein *Funfziger* a man of fifty, ein *Bürger* a citizen, ein *Wittwer* a widower (the Fem. being *Wittwe*), Decl. I, (see R. 77).

7. To express instrumentality : *Bohrer* gimblet, fr. *bohren* to pierce, Decl. I.

8. In the names of some birds, in which it seems an abbreviation of *Har* a large bird : *Adler* eagle, Masc. I.

. In some adjs. and substs. its meaning is obscure, and in some words it is even doubtful, whether it is an affix, or forms an original part of the root. Often too, it is a corruption of foreign terminations, as *Kaiser* emperor, fr. *Cæsar*, der *Körper* body, fr. *corpus* ; *Pharisäer* Pharisee, fr. *Pharisæus*, das *Theater* theatre, fr. *theatrum*, *Pulver* powder, fr. *pulvis*, *Fieber* fever, fr. *febris*.

Ern, *affix*, compounded of *er* and *en* and uniting both meanings.

It is found :

1. United to substs. to express qualities, as : *zinnern* made of tin, fr. *Zinn* tin, (see *en* pref. 5th signification).

2. With verbs, to express effecting : *räuchern* to smoke, i. e. make smoke, *einschlâfern* to lull to sleep, *es schlâfert mich* I am sleepy, i. e. something makes me sleepy.

3. To express imitation, *fâlbern* to behave like a calf.

4. To express repetition, *bedchern* to tipple, use the cup (*Becher*) frequently.

Es or **E**, *affix*, marks the Gen. of articles, substs. adjs. and prons. Masc. and Neut., (see Rs. 2 and 3, 48, 67, 99, &c.)

Es | **t** or | **t**, *affix*, used :

1. As the sign of the 2d pers. sing. of verbs, (see R. 154).

2. ————— superl. of adjs. and advs. (see Rs. 83 and 184).

3. ————— ordinal numbers from 20 upwards, (see R. 137).

Et or **I**, *affix*, used :

1. As a verbal inflection, especially of the past tenses, (see Obs. V. p. 64).

2. As the sign of the ord. numbers to 19 incl. (see R. 137).

3. As a final of abstract monosyl. substs. formed from verbs and mostly Fem. as *Nacht* might, power, fr. *mögen* may.

4. As an intensitive sign in some verbs : *schlachten* to slaughter, fr. *schlagen* to strike.

N.B. In the three last significations, it is always *t*.

Et, *term.* from Lat. substs. in *eta, etum, etes* : Masc. and Neut. II, (see R. 33, *a*).

Eur, *term.* of substs. from the French, Masc. I.

Ehl, *ADV.* signifying amiss, and used as a *pref. sep.*, as *fehlschlagen* to fail, (see R. 178).

Fort, *ADV.* signifying forth, forward, away, and used as a *separ. pref.* *fortgehen* to go forth, or away, *der Fortgang* progress, (R. 178).

Für, *PREP.* signifying *for* (Lat. *pro*) and used as an *insep. pref.* to substs. *Fürsprecher* intercessor (one speaking for, i. e. in behalf of another); *Fürsorge* providence (care for others).

Ge, *pref. insep.* (anciently *ga, gi, ke, ki, ko*), has generally the power of the Lat. *con*. It indicates :

1. Union and partnership : *Gesell* companion.
2. Collectives, (with a change of the radical vowels), *Gesflügel* fowl, from *fliegen*, *Gebirg* mountainous district, fr. *Berg*, *Gestirn* constellation, fr. *Stern*, (of these many take the final *e*).
3. Iteratives : *Gelärm* noise, fr. *Lärm*, *Geschrei* screaming, fr. *Schrei*.
4. An intensitive in verbs : *gedenken* to think of, fr. *denken*.
5. The general sign of the past participle.

In many words (in some of which it appears only as *g* : *Glieb*, limb, and in others as *t* : *flug* prudent), it seems either superfluous, or at least difficult of explanation. It is found in all the Teutonic languages, and was formerly frequent in English.

Gegen, *PREPOS.* signif. against, contrary, (Lat. *anti*), and used as an *insep. pref.* with substs. *das Gegengift* antidote, *Gegenstand* object.

Graph, *term.* of substs. from the Greek, Masc. VI.

Haft, *affix*, derived fr. *haben* or *haften*, to have or fix, and joined to substs. verbs, or adjs., to indicate that the thing, state, action or quality is attached to something; as *tugendhaft* virtuous, possessing virtue, *schmerzhaft* painful, *wohnhaft* dwelling. Sometimes it implies only *capability*; *wehrhaft* defensible, and still more frequently likeness : *fabelhaft* fabulous, *mädchenhaft* maidenlike, in which sense it is synonymous with *artig* and *mässig*.

Heit, *affix*, mostly attached to adjs., and expressing an abstraction or union. It forms substs. and corresponds with the Engl. termin. *head, hood, ness, ty*, and is derived from an old Germ. subst. signifying person : *Gottheit* godhead, *Mannheit* manhood. Fem. VI.

Heim, ADV. *pref. sep.* signifying home: *heimgehen* to go home, *Heimweh* home sickness, (see R. 178).

Her, *pref. sep.* Lat. *huc*, here, hither: *herkommen* to come here, (see R. 178).

Hin, ——— *illuc*, there, thither *hinkommen*, to get there.

N.B. These particles are often used in Germ., when in Engl. the simple verb would be employed. They are frequently joined to the preps. *ein* (for *in*) *auß*, *auf*, *unter*, *ab*, *über*, to express the *direction* of the motion, besides those of *to* and *from* the person speaking, (see R. 178).

Hinter, behind, (Lat. *retro*), PREP. used as a *pref. separ.* and *insep.* (see R. 180), *hintergehen* to deceive, *die Hinterlist* craftiness.

Ich, rich or *erich*, *affix*, meaning a male person, from the old German *CRAKE* a man: *Ständrich* standard-bearer; but it often appears without an assignable meaning, Masc. II.

Ich, *affix*. As a termination of subst. it implies collection, similar to the Lat. *etum*, and has no plural: *Rehricht* sweepings. Added to subst. to form adjs. it signifies likeness, *holzich* woody, *thöricht* foolish.

Ict, *term.* of Lat. subst. in *ictum* or *ictus*, Decl. II.

Ie, *term.* of subst. from the French and Lat. in *ie* and *ia*, (see *ei*), Fem. V.

Ier, *term.* of subst. fr. Lat. in *trium*, Neut. II.

————— French, in *ier*, Masc. II. *Begier* desire, and *Zier* ornament, of Germ. origin, are Fem. Decl. VI.

Iren or *iren*, a *term.* of many verbs of foreign origin, and also used to make verbs from Germ. subst. and adjs., as *buchstabieren* to spell fr. *Buchstabe* letter, (see Obs. III, p. 63).

Ig, *affix*, in subst. probably instead of *ing* and of no assignable meaning. In adjs. it implies a having, being, or causing that which is expressed in the subst., verb or adv. to which it is attached: *freudig* joyful, *schläferig* sleepy, *verdächtig* suspicious, i. e. creating suspicion, *vorig* former, *heutig* belonging to this day.

It is sometimes added as an intermediate link for the syllable *feit*, for although we do not say *frömmig*, we say *Frömmigkeit*. The same is done for the formation of some verbs: *bändigen* to tame, from *Band*.

Ih, *term.* of subst. from the Greek, in *ika*; Fem. VI.

————— Latin, in *icus*, being personal appellatives, Masc. VI.

Il or *ill*, ——— Latin, in *illum* or *illus*, Neut. II.

Many in *il* are used only in the plur. adding *ten*, as *Begetabilien* vegetables.

I n, *prefix*, to substs. corresponding with the Lat. *in*: *Inhalt* contents.

—Verbs prefer the syllables *ein* or *ent*, as *enthalten* to contain, *einhalten* (also *innehalten*) to stop.

— *term.* of substs. fr. the Lat., in *ina*, Fem. VI, or fr. *inus*, Masc. II. Some change *inus* into *iner* I.

— or *inn* Fem. *affix* (see R. 14), VI.

I n g, *affix*, to substs., related to *ling* and *ung* (Engl. *ing*), the meaning of which is obscure; Masc. II.

I n ð, *term.* of subst. fr. the Lat., in *incia*; Fem. VI.

I ð, *affix*, related to *ig* and *icht*, and the Eng. *ical*, *ish*, signifies possession, origin, similarity, conformity or agreement: *neidið* envious (having envy), *himmlisch* heavenly (belonging to, or originating from, heaven); *nárrisch* foolish (fool-like). It is added to names of countries, towns and persons to turn them into adjectives: *Dánisch* (fr. *Dâne*), *Wienerisch* (fr. *Wiener*, an inhabitant of Vienna). *Lutherisch* Lutheran. It is particularly added to words of Lat. or Gr. origin with the terminations *is*, *icus* and *ikos*: *Katholisch*, Catholic. Sometimes the word receiving this addition varies its final for the sake of euphony, and particularly drops *e* or *en*; some also change their vowels: *Frantzose* Frenchman, *Frantzösisch* French.

NB. The syllable *isch* is in meaning closely related to *er*, and thence, when euphony requires it, *er* is added to the names of towns instead of *isch*, e. gr. *der Magdeburger Dom*, the Cathedral of Magdeburg, instead of *Magdeburgische*, (see *er* and R. 77).

The terminations *isch*, *ig*, *icht* and *lich*, altho' more or less related to each other, require great discrimination in their use, not only in the formation of new words, but in the application of such as are found with these terminations. Thus: *launig* means humorous, *launicht* whimsical, *kindlich* filial, *kintisch* childish, *argwöhnisch* having suspicion, *verdächtig* exciting suspicion, *ein steiniger Weg* a stony road, (i. e. covered with stones), *eine steinichte Birne* a stony pear, (i. e. like stone), *eine härene Decke* a hair blanket, *eine haarige Decke* a hairy blanket, *eine haarichte Decke* a blanket with a few hairs about it, *höflich* polite, *höfisch* cringing, *herrlich* lordly, *herrißch* rude, *jährig* one year old, *jährlich* annual, *geistig* mental, spirituous, *geistlich* clerical, &c.

I o n, *term.* of substs. fr. the Lat. ending in the Nom. in *io*, Gen. *ionis*; Fem. VI, exc. a few which are Masc. & of Decl. II, (see Rs. 26a, 33 a.)

Isst, *term.* of substs. fr. the Lat. *in iscus*; Masc. VI.

Ist, _____ or Greek *in ista*; Masc. VI.

It, _____ or Greek. *in ita, yta* or *ites*; Masc. VI.

Iv, _____ *ivus*, Masc. or. *ivum*, Neut. II.

Itia, _____ *itia*, Fem. VI. or *itus*, Masc. VI, or *itium*, Neut. II.

Zeit, *affix*, used in the formation of abstract substs. from adjs. and advs. ending in *bar*, *el*, *er*, *ig*, *lich* and *sam*. It is synonymous with *heit*, which is joined to adjs. of different terminations, and with *e* as a termination of substs. made from adjs.; thus *die Güte*, goodness, is used for *Gütigkeit*, (see *ig*): *Dankbarkeit* gratitude, *Heiterkeit* cheerfulness.

Lei or **ley**, *affix*, is derived from an old subst. implying sort or kind, and is joined to adjs. of number in the Genit. fem. (see R. 144). N.B. instead of *allerley* of all sorts, we also say *allerhand*.

Lein, *affix*, of a diminutive kind (see R. 15), and is probably related to the Engl. *lean*, thin (small), and to *klein* little.

Lich, *affix*, related to the Engl. *ly* (like), and generally of the same signification, viz. the manner or likeness of a thing, though often translated by other terminations, as *ous*, *able*, &c. It is joined to adjs. and verbs, but most frequently to substs.: *süßlich* sweetish, *fälschlich* falsely, *unerbittlich* inexorable, *künstlich* artificial, *wörtlich* verbal, *fürstlich* princely. Verbs in taking *lich*, sometimes throw away *en*: *behaglich* comfortable fr. *behagen* to suit; sometimes they retain it, but take a *t* between the two syllables: *wissentlich* knowingly, from *wissen*.

ling, *affix*, forming substs. masc. only (Decl. II), related to *lich* and in some words used instead of *ing*, signifies

1. A fitness to a thing expressed in the root: *Däumling* thumb-stall.

2. A similarity to the thing with some idea of littleness: *Dichters-ling* poetaster.

3. In composition with verbs, a person or thing related to a certain state or action: *Findling* foundling.

4. With adjs. in the sense of nature or quality: *Jüngling* youth, *Neuling* novice, *Zwilling* twin.

Lings, *affix*, of a few advs: *blindlings* blindly.

Los, *affix* to adjs., corresponding with the Engl. *less*: *lebloß* lifeless.

— *pref. sep.*, off: *die Flinte geht los* the gun goes off. Towards, in connexion with *auf*: *auf einen losgehen* to go towards a person.

Mäßig, *ADJ. aff.* signif. *conformity*: *kunstmäßig* according to art.

Mit, *PREP.* signifying *with* (Lat. *con*) and used as a *sep. pref.* adverbially: *mitleben* to live with, *die Mitlebenben* contemporaries, *Mitbürger* fellow-citizen, *Mitarbeiter* co-operator, *ich focht in jener Schlacht mit*, I fought also in that battle, &c. (See R. 178 and Note 24, p. 75).

Nach, *PREP.*, signifying *after*, or in imitation of (see Rs. 178 & N. 24, p. 75).

Nen, *term.* of many verbs in which the *n* often appears as a factitive or intensitive sign: *warnen* to warn, *fr. wahren* to be careful, *sehen* to long for, look intensely, *fr. sehen* to see.

Net, *term.* of substs. of agency, formed from verbs in *nen*, but also added to nouns to express that an individual is connected with the thing: *Galfner* falconer.

Niß, *affix*, signifying *thing*; it is most frequently joined to verbs, either in the inf. (without *en*): *Begräbniß* burial, *fr. begraben*; or in the past part., *Geständniß* a confession, *fr. gestanden* confessed. These substs., as the examples show, change their vowels, and present the abstract idea of an action, state or locality. Fem. or Neut. II.

Ob, *PREP.* signifying *above* (for *über*), and used as an *insep. pref.*: *das Obdach* shelter.

Og or **oge**, *term.* of substs. from the Lat. in *ogus*, Masc. V or VI.

Ol or **oll**, _____ *ollum*, Neut. II.

Om, _____ *oma*, appellatives Masc. II.
the others Neut. II.

On, _____ *o*, Gen. *onis*, Fem. VI;
but a few taken from the French, or derived from Lat. substs. in *onus* are Masc. II.

Ont, *term.* of substs. fr. the Lat. in *on*, Gen. *ontis*, Masc. II.

Or, _____ pronounced in some words short, and
in some long, Masc. IV.

Orium, *term.* of substs. fr. the Lat. (see R. 46).

Ot, _____ in *os*, Gen. *otis*, or in *ota*. Masc. IV or
VI. *Das Fagot* bassoon, and *Schaffot* scaffold, are of Decl. II.

Rich, see *ich*.

Rei or **ren**, *affix*, composed of *r* and *ei* or *en*, Fem. VI.

Reich, *ADJ.* signifying *rich*, *abounding with*, is added to substs. in the formation of adjectives: *segenreich* blissful.

Se is discernible both as *pref.* and *affix* without any distinct meaning. It is also used in the declensions, especially the Gen. masc. and neut.; and forms advs. from substs. and adjs. (see Decls. and Advs.).

Sal, *affix*, forming substs. generally from verbs, and indicates a thing of which the prefixed word affirms an action or state: Drangsal oppression; Neut. II.

Sam, *affix*, used in the formation of adjs. from verbal substs. and from verbs. It bears an affinity to *bar* and signifies possibility, and propensity: furchtsam timid, furchtbar terrible, heilsam wholesome, heilbar curable. It corresponds with several of the Engl. adjs. in *some* and *ble*.

Schaft, *affix*, probably from *schaffen* to produce, and indicates:

1. The condition of a thing: Freundschaft friendship.

2. A union of persons: Gemeinschaft community, Priesterschaft priesthood. Fem. VI.

Schen, *affix* forming verbs, and an intensitive quality: heischen to require, herrschen to rule.

Sel, *affix*, related to *sal*: Räthsel riddle. Neut. I.

Selig, *affix*, joined to adjs. and implying abundance, from the old subst. *SEL*, abundance, multitude: glücklich happy, redselig quacious.

Soph, *term.* of substs. fr. the Greek; Masc. VI.

Et and **t**, see *est* and *et*.

Te, **ten**, **tet**, the terminations of the regular imperfect, (see R. 154).

Thum, *affix*, corresponding with the Engl. termin. *dom*, and derived from the old northern *domr*, a thing of great importance. It implies the possession of or dominion over a thing, or a dignity: Eigenthum property, Herzogthum dukedom. It particularly differs from *schaft* in as much as the latter relates to the collection of persons in a rank or dignity: thus, Ritterschaft chivalry, means all persons who are knights; Ritterthum knighthood, the rank of knight. Neut. III.

Uct, *term.* of substs. fr. the Lat. in *uctus*, or *uctum*; Neut. II.

Ueber, *PREPOS.* signifying *over*, and used as a *separ.* and *insep. pref.* (see R. 180).

Um, *PREPOS.* signifying *round*, *over*, *up*, and used as a *separ.* and *insep. pref.* (see R. 180).

— *term.* of substs. fr. the Lat. in *um* and *ium*, (see R. 46).

Un, *pref. insep.*, the privative corresponding with the Engl. privatives *un* and *in*. In a few words *ohn* is occasionally used for *un*, which may lead us to suppose *un* to be connected with the prepos. *ohne* without.

Ung, *affix*, with very few exceptions formed from infins. to express the result of an action, and by which these kind of words differ from

infin. used as substs. which express the action itself, and in Engl. are generally rendered by the participle present. E. gr. Das Erziehen der Kinder ist nichts Leichtes, the education of children is no trifle. Seine Kinder haben eine gute Erziehung gehabt, his children have had a good education. Das Hoffen the hoping, die Hoffnung, hope.—Often, however, ung is joined to other words, and merely implies collection: die Stallung stabling. Fem. VI.

NB.—A few monosyllables in ung are Masc.

Unter, PREP. signifying under, beneath, and used as a *pref. separ.* and *insep.* (see R. 180).

Ur, *pref. insep.* signifying *origin* or *original*, and is of rare occurrence: Urbewohner aborigenes, Urquell fountain head, Urtheil judgement, and urtheilen to judge, &c.

— term of substs. fr. the Lat. in *ura*, or from the French in *ure*.
Fem. VI.

Ur, ————— utum, &c. (see R. 33, a).

Uth, *affix*, of substs. designating, like ath, a condition: Armuth poverty. Fem. VI.

Ver, *pref. insep.*, (see R. 175) related to für and vor, generally designates the opposite of er, viz: the turning away, of the destruction of things: verderren to desolate, verschwinden to disappear, versprechen to promise, i. e. giving away by speaking; in this sense it also marks the doing amiss: sich versprechen or verschreiben, to say or write amiss (one thing for another). In some instances ver, like er, designates the falling into a different state, and is in this sense generally prefixed to active verbs, whilst er stands before such as are neut.: erblinden to grow blind, verblinden to blind. In some verbs it is merely intensive, as in ehren and verehren to honour; in a few instances the meaning of this particle is obscure, and in others even contrary to its general acceptations, as in verschreiben in the sense of ordering something by letter.

Verab, veran, verun, *comp. pref.* in which ver is merely intensive, (see R. 176).

Viel, ADJ. used as a *pref.* in the sense of the Lat. *multus* signifying much, many: vielförmig multiferous, Vielraß, glutton.

Voll, ADJ. signifying *full*, and used as a *pref. separ.* or *insep.*; (see R. 180).—It is also used as an affix in the formation of adjectives in the manner of reich and selig, and with nearly the same signification: ehrenvoll honourable.

Vor PREP. and used as a *sep. prefix*: before, in presence of, (Lat. *ante*, *præ*, *pro*). Vorstellen to introduce, also to represent, (place before).

It also implies an action done before persons, for their governance or imitation: *Vorschreiben* to prescribe; *Vorschrift* rule of conduct, also a copy to write from; *einem vorspielen*, *vorlesen*, to play on an instrument, or read before another, either for his amusement or imitation; (see R. 178). Sometimes it means the front: *Vormann* the front man, in a military line, *Vormauer* bulwark.

Voran, *comp. pref. sep.* signifying before—*Vorangehen* to go before, (see R. 178).

Vorbei, } *comp. pref. sep.* signifying by:—*Vorbei* or *vorübergehen*,
Vorüber, } to pass by, (see R. 178).

Weg, *ADV.* signifying away, and used as a *sep. pref.* (see R. 178).

Wohl, *ADV.* signifying well, and used as a *sep. pref.* (see R. 178):

Zer, *pref. insep.*, probably from *zerren* to pull asunder, an intensive of *zer* in its first sense, viz. that of removing or destroying; e. gr. *reißen* to tear, *verreißen* intensive of *reißen*, *zerreißen* to tear into pieces; or *brechen*, *verbrechen*, *zerbrechen* to break, break into pieces, sever. (see R. 175).

ßig, *affix*, joined to numbers, in which, with the exception of *einzig* only, it marks ten, like the Engl. *ty*: *vierzig* forty, (see R. 136).

NB. In thirty it is turned into *ßig*, *dreißig*.

Zu, *pref. insep.* signifying *to*, adding to, directing to, (Lat. *ad*), and is related to *an* and *bei*; with this difference that the direction indicated by *an* refers more to the outside or surface of things, and *be* or *bei* merely that of a juxtaposition. Sometimes however these particles seem to be nearly synonymous, as in *anbringen*, *beibringen*, *zubringen*; yet the usage of language has introduced some difference in the application of the words, which can only be learnt by practice, (see R. 178).

INDEX.

The numbers which are not preceded by a sign refer to the rules; N. stands for note, p. for page

- Xb**, 178.
Xber, place of, 318.
Ablat. relation, 264 and 265.
Absolute cases, 183, 245.
Abstr. substs. 93, b. and N. 14, p. 47.
Accent, p. 10.
Accessory sentences, 277 to 288.
 ————— their construction, 304 to 309.
Accusative, use of the, 251.
 ————— governed by adjs. 251.
 ————— prepos. 192 and 193.
 ————— verbs 251 to 256.
 ————— use of, in substs. of time, 251, c.
Address, modes of, 106 and 107.
Adjectives, declens. of, 67 and 68.
 ————— when declined, 66.
 ————— when not, 65, 77 and 78.
 ————— compar. of, 83 to 90.
 ————— irreg. compar. of, 87.
 ————— government of, 251 d.
 257, b. 258, d. 259, 260 and 263.
 ————— used substantively 93, 94 and N. 14, p. 47.
 ————— place of, 64 to 66, 282, 290, 294, 300.
 ————— sentences, 280 to 282.
Adverbs, formation of, 183.
 ————— compar. of, 184 to 188.
 ————— irreg. compar. of, 188.
 ————— place of, 178, 295, 298 & 299.
Adverbial forms, 275.
 ————— sentences, 283 to 288.
Adversative conjs. Note 67, p. 144.
Affixes, p. 147, &c.
Ago, Note 63, p. 139.
Alphabet, 1.
Xis, as, in factitive verbs, 273.
 ———— in access. sentences, 284, 305.
 ———— omitted, 287.
Xn, required by adjs. and verbs, 263.
 ———— in comp. verbs, 178.
 ———— pref. and affix, p. 148.
Xnderthalt, 141.
Any, Note, 20, p. 57.
Apposition, 211.
Articles, declined, 2 and 3.
Art. def. influence on the adj. 74.
 ———— used in Germ. and not in Engl. 198-200.
 ———— omitted in both languages, 201-203.
 ———— used in Engl. and not in Germ. 204.
 ———— differently placed, 205.
 ———— used for the indef. 206.
 ———— indef. influence on the adj. 76.
 ———— omitted, 207.
As, 91, 273.
 — to, 287.—not rendered 287.
At, 263.
Attribute, 66.
Xuch, 299, Example 5.
Xus, required by substs. 210, c.
 ———— required by adjs. verbs, 263.
 ———— used as a pref. 178 & p. 149.
Auxiliary verbs, conjugated, 154.
 ———— forming tenses, 154
 163 to 165.
 ———— forming the passive 166.
 ———— form. the subj. 229 & Note 44, p. 107.
 ———— omitted, 156 and 157, 159 to 161.

To be, rendered by *ſollen*, 155.
 ——— suppressed 156, 157 and 159.
 ——— about 158.
ſie, 305.
 By, sign of the Abl. 264.
 Capital letters, p. 2, &c.
 ——— their use, R. 9, p. 9,
 Note 18, p. 52.
 Cases, 17, 246 to 262, Note 58,
 p. 130.
 Causal relation, 257, 263.
 ——— its position, 298.
 Change of vowels, in adjs. and
 advs. 86.
 ——— in substs. 14, 15,
 29, 32, 34, 35.
 ——— in verbs, 162, III.
 Observation, 73.
 Collective substs., gender of, 14,
 R. 11, e.
 ——— government of,
 223.
 Compar. of adjs. 83 to 91.
 ——— advbs. 184 to 187.
 Compound consonants, forming
 ——— additional arti-
 culations, p. 7.
 ——— which only
 shorten the pre-
 vious vowels, p. 4,
 R. 6.
 ——— preps. 194 to 196.
 ——— for the supine, 274.
 ——— substs. 13.
 ——— verbs, 179 to 182.
 Conditional tense, 154, b.
 Conjugation, R. 154 to 182.
 Conjunctions, 284 to 288.
 ——— moving the verb, 305 &
 Note 67, p. 144.
 ——— to turn the Gerund, 284
 and 285.
 Construction, 289 to 309.
 Contractions, 194 to 196, N. 47,
 p. 114.
 Co-ordinate sentences, 244.
 Co-ordinative conjs. N. 67, p. 144.
Daß, 232, 277, 305, N. 43, p. 107.
 Dative, governed by adjs. 258, d
 and 259 and 260.
 ——— gov. by prep. 192 and 193.

Dat. gov. by verbs, 252 and 325,
 258, 261 and 262.
 ——— its place, 295.
 Declension of adjs. 64 to 94.
 ——— of articles, 2 and 3.
 ——— card. numbers, 78.
 ——— foreign substs. 44 to 47.
 ——— indef. numerals, see in-
 def. prons.
 ——— names of persons, 55
 to 63.
 ——— of countries &c. 28.
 ——— ord. numbers, 79.
 ——— pronouns, 95 to 135.
 ——— substantives, 17 to 63.
 Demonstr. Pers. and Possess. un-
 declined. 115.
Der, art. 2, and pron. 108, 110,
 112 and 119.
Derjenige, use of, 112.
Derſelbe, for *er*, 97.
Deſto, 92.
Die Reinigen, &c., as substs. 104.
Dieß or *bieß*, 109 and 115.
 Diminutive substs. 15.
 ——— verbs, see *ein*, 151.
 Diphthongs, p. 3.
 Direct construction, 293 to 299.
 Direction, 164 and 165 and 193.
 Distinctive numbers, 139.
 To do, suppressed, 160 and 161.
Doch, 161.
Dürfen, 162, 229, Note 44, p. 144.
Ê, dropped, 24, NB. 48 (Note), 82
 and 154, Observations, p. 63.
Êin, indef. art. 2.
 ——— omitted, 207.
 ——— pron. 130.
 ——— numeral, 136 & Note 21.
Êben, 314.
 Emphasis, see indir. constr.
Erſt, 314.
Ês, 115, Note 47, p. 114 & R. 303.
 — and *ihm*, not used after prepos.
 98.
 Euphony, see indir. constr.
 Factitive relation, 266 to 273.
Fallê, 183, 305.
Fold, *ſach*, *fältig*, 145.
 For, 272, and Note 59.

- Foreign substantives, their declensions, 44 to 47.
 ——— their gender, NB. to R. 12.
 ——— their accentuation, 12, p.10.
- From, sign of the Ablative, 264.
 Ganj, undecl. 77.
 Ge, the sign of the past partic., when omitted Observ. III. p. 63.
 Geben, used impersonally, 220.
 Gender of substantives, 6 to 16.
 ——— compound substs. 13.
 ——— foreign substs. NB. to R. 12.
 ——— names of countries and places, 11, c. and N. 229.
 ——— substs. formed from other parts of speech, 11, f.
- Genitive, adverbial, for indef. time, 183, N. 50, p. 116.
 ——— double, 214.
 ——— governed by adjs. 257, b.
 ——— by prepos. 190.
 ——— by verbs, 255 to 257.
 ——— place of, 297.
 ——— substitutes for 2p0 (p.97), to 213 and 263.
 ——— of Demonstr. pron. 113, 114.
 ——— of Pers. pron. 96.
 ——— Poss. 105.
 ——— of titles, 215.
- Gleiche, with the Gen. 312.
 Government of preps. 289 to 293.
 ——— of verbs and adjs. 246 to 275.
- Haben, its conjug. 154.
 ——— used with intrans. verbs, 163 to 165.
 ——— omitted, 156 and 157.
- Half, halb, 141 and 142.
 Halb, halben, 190 and 196.
- He who, &c. 121.
- Historical tense, 225.
- How, suppressed, 238.
- Höchst, 187.
- Imperative, 151, Observ. I, p. 63 and R. 230.
- Imperf. tense, 154.
 ——— its use, 225.
- Impers. verbs, 171.
 ——— with the Dat. 258, c. 260.
 ——— passive 173, 261 and 262.
- In order to, auf daß um zu, 277.
- Indicative, 154,
 ——— its use, 227.
- Infinitive, 154.
 ——— its use, 232.
 ——— with zu, 233 to 236, 238.
 ——— without zu, 237.
 ——— place of, 294, 306, 308.
 ——— for the past partic., 241.
- Interjections, 197.
- Interrog. sentences, 293.
- Je, desto, 92.
- Können, 162, 229.
- Lang, during, 317.
- Lassen, 162, and Note 45, p. 111.
- Leute, 40, 43.
- Locality, relation of, 249.
- Male appellatives made fem. 14.
- Mann, 129.
- Mann, 38, b. 40.
- Manner, relation of, 249.
- Miß, 181.
- Mögen, 162, 229.
- Moods, use of, 227 to 245.
- Müssen, 162, 229.
- Nach, 271.
- Names of countries 11, c. 28, 199, 204, Note 29, R. 211.
 ——— metals, II.
 ——— months, II, 211.
 ——— mountains, 28.
 ——— persons, 55 to 63.
 ——— provinces, see names of countries.
 ——— rivers, 28.
 ——— seasons, II.
 ——— substances, 112, b.
 ——— towns, II, c. 28, 199, Note 29, 211.
 ——— villages, see names of countries.
 ——— winds, II.
- Negations. place of, 299.
- Neut. verbs, see verbs.
- Nom., verbs requiring the, N. 58, p. 130.
- Nach, 314.

- Numbers, cardinal, 136.
 — definite, 136.
 — diminutive, 141 & 142.
 — distinctive, 139.
 — fractional, 138.
 — Indefinite, 77, 130.
 — ordinal, 137.
 — partitive, 140.
 — to denote repetition, 143
 — variety, 144.
 Numeral substa. 146.
 Obgleich, obgleich, obwohl, 288,
 305.
 Objective sentences, 246, &c.
 Of, different manners of rendering,
 209 to 215, N. 29, p. 95 & R. 263.
 — not rendered, 211 and 212.
 One, omitted 94.
 Optative 228, a.
 Paar (ein), undeclined, Note 62,
 p. 139.
 Participles, 239 to 245, 274, 282.
 Participle past, formation of, Ob-
 serv. III, p. 63 and R. 162:
 — its place, see Pre-
 dicate.
 — Pres. or gerund, how
 rendered, 242 to 245.
 — with *zu*, 235.
 Passive voice, 166 and N. 25.
 — used impersonally, 261
 and 262.
 Perfect tense, 226.
 Persons and things, 252, 255.
 Predicate, 216 and 217.
 — place of 294, 306 to 309.
 Predicative adj. 65.
 — substa. relating to fe-
 males, 221.
 Prefixes, 147, &c.
 Prepositions, government of 189
 to 193.
 — combined with other
 parts of speech, 194 to 196.
 — expressive of the abl.
 relation, 264 to 265.
 — fact.
 relation, 266 to 274.
 — after verbal substa.
 210, f, p. 99 and N.
 33,
 — intransitive verbs
 268.
 — requiring *zu* before
 the Inf. 263.
 Pres. tense, 154, 224.
 Pronouns, adjective, 99 to 133.
 — demonstr. 108 to 115.
 — Indefinite, 129 to 135.
 — Interrog. 123 to 128.
 — Possessive, 99 to 107.
 — omitted, 208.
 — superseded by the
 def. Art. 101.
 — the def. artic. and
 pers. pron. 100.
 — Reflective, 95.
 — Relative, 116 to 122.
 — never omitted,
 N. 60, p. 134.
 — Subst. or Personal, 95
 to 98.
 — Place of 296.
 Proper names, see names.
 Schon, 315.
 Sentences, accessory, adj. 280 to
 282.
 — adverbial
 283 to 288.
 — construction
 of, 304 to
 309.
 — subst. 277 to
 279.
 — principal direct, con-
 struction of 291 to
 299.
 — principal indirect, con-
 struction of, 300 to
 303.
 Seyn, 154.
 — use of, with intrans. verbs,
 164 to 165.
 — omitted 157 to 159.
 Self, N. 17, p. 48.
 So, demonstr. after wenn, &c.
 283.
 So that, so as, 287.
 Sollen, 162, 229.
 Sondern, 319.
 Subject formed by a sentence, 293,
 examples 5 and 6.

Subject turned into the object, N.
 53, p. 122.
 — of a sentence, place of the,
 293 to 300.
 Subjunctive mood, 227.
 — used for the conditional,
 228, *b*.
 Subst. Infinitive, 237, *a*.
 — pronouns, 95.
 — sentences, 277 to 279.
 — in apposition, 211.
 — decl. of 17 to 63.
 — diminutive, 15.
 — gend. of, 6 to 16.
 — kinds of, 4.
 — with different plurals, 38
 to 39.
 — of two genders, 16.
 — used only in the plur. 43.
 — — — sing. 41.
 — taking their plural from
 different words, 42.
 Superlative of adjs. 85 to 90.
 — advs. 184 to 188.
 — absolute, 88.
 Supine, see Infinitive.
 Terminations, p. 147, &c.
 — of adjs. dropping
e, 82.
 — adverbial, 183.
 — of substs. to de-
 termine gender,
 12.
 — of substs. to de-
 termine declens.
 23 to 26.
 — plur. 33, &c.
 — verbs, Observ.
 p. 63.
 Than, *als*, 91.
 The *je*, 92.
 There is, *es giebt*, 220.
 Time, relation of, 248.
 — its place, 298 and
 299.
 To rendered by the Gen. 209.
 — by *zu* before the Inf. 233.
 — *zu*, *nach* or *an*, 310 and 311.
 Um, a fact. relat 270.

Verbs, form and classification, 147.
 — moods, tenses and persons of,
 148 to 152.
 — conjug. of auxiliary, 154.
 — impersonal, 171 to
 173.
 — insep. comp. 175
 to 177.
 — intransitive, 163 to
 165.
 — irregular, 162.
 — Passive voice, 166
 and 167.
 — reflective and reci-
 procal, 168 to 170.
 — regular, 154.
 — separ. comp. 178
 and 179.
 — separ. and insep.
 comp. 180 to 182.
 — government of 246 to 275.
 Viel, 72.
 Voll, voller, 212 *b*, and N. 34, *a*.
 Von, expressive of the abl. rela-
 tion, and with the Pass. voice,
 264.
 — for the Gen. 210, *a*, *b*, *c*, *h*,
i, *k*, and 210, p. 99.
 Vor expressive of the abl. relation,
 265.
 — gen. rela-
 tion, 263, *k*.
 Vowels, p. 2.
 Was für, was für ein, etc. 126 & 127.
 Wegen, contracted with pers. pron.
 196.
 Wer, was, use of 121, 125.
 Werden, in the formation of the
 Future, 154 *b*.
 — in that of the Passive voice,
 166.
 Whoever, 122, 288.
 With, abl. vor, 265.
 Zu, before Inf. 233, 234 and 236.
 — the Part. pres. 235.
 — a sign of the factitive relation,
 267 to 269.
 — after verbs of motion, 310.



